

# Project

Order processing  
and project management





CAS Software AG

CAS-Weg 1 – 5

76131 Karlsruhe

0721 9638 - 0

info@cas.de

www.cas-crm.com

The Project module is being developed

by itdesign GmbH, Tübingen, Germany

www.itdesign.de

## **Copyright**

The information contained herein may be altered without prior notice. The names and data used in the examples are fictitious, except where otherwise stated. No part of this document may be reproduced or transmitted for any purposes whatsoever without the express written consent of CAS Software AG, irrespective of the manner or the means, electronic or mechanical, by which this occurs.

© 2008 - 2022 CAS Software AG. All rights reserved.

CAS-Weg 1 - 5, 76131 Karlsruhe, Germany, [www.cas.de/en](http://www.cas.de/en)

All trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

Disclaimer

No guarantee can be made for the accuracy of the content. Notification of errors would be appreciated.

**September 2022**

## Contents

1	Introduction	7
1.1	Feature Overview.....	7
1.2	Specifics with modules and integrations.....	8
1.3	Note on receipt items.....	8
2	Quote and order	9
2.1	Creating a project for an opportunity .....	9
2.2	Adding other opportunities to the project.....	11
2.3	Order tab and project items.....	14
2.3.1	Views and features for items .....	15
2.3.2	The data record window for items .....	16
2.3.3	Working with items in the Order tab.....	23
2.3.4	Assigning orders (with Easy Invoice) .....	27
2.4	Creating documents for items.....	33
	Modifying the field variables for items .....	34
2.5	Products, prices and discounts .....	35
2.5.1	Price and discount lists .....	37
2.5.2	Price and discount in addresses .....	38
3	Project details	39
4	Using e-mail templates	41
	Creating e-mail templates.....	41
5	Project and resource planning in the tree view	43
5.1	Project planning basics .....	43
5.2	Project planning in the Desktop Client.....	44
5.2.1	The Gantt chart .....	44
5.2.2	Milestones.....	46
5.2.3	Predecessor and successor.....	47
5.2.4	Exchange with Microsoft Project and Open Workbench.....	49
5.2.5	Risks.....	51
5.2.6	Targets.....	53
5.3	Project planning in the Web Client .....	55
5.4	Resource planning basics.....	57
5.5	Resource planning in the Desktop Client.....	59
5.5.1	Views and features for resource plans.....	59
5.5.2	Resources and items in a job.....	60
5.5.3	The data record window for resource plans .....	62
5.5.4	Resource planning in the tree view.....	64
5.5.5	Settings for resource planning in the tree view .....	66
5.5.6	Resource planning for multiple projects.....	68
5.5.7	Completion grade in the Gantt chart .....	70
5.6	Resource planning in the Web Client.....	71
5.6.1	Resource plans .....	71

5.6.2	Resource planning .....	72
<b>6</b>	<b>Using project and job templates</b> .....	<b>77</b>
6.1	Using project templates.....	77
6.1.1	Creating and editing templates.....	78
6.1.2	Organizing templates in folders.....	78
6.2	Editing a template.....	79
6.2.1	Editing a project in the tree view.....	80
6.2.2	Editing data records in the data record editor .....	82
6.3	Editing a project in the data record window .....	85
6.4	Adding or continuing a workflow .....	86
6.5	Using job templates .....	86
6.5.1	Project and job templates.....	86
6.5.2	Specifics when using job templates.....	87
<b>7</b>	<b>Recording and analyzing project costs</b> .....	<b>88</b>
7.1	Time records in the Desktop Client.....	88
7.1.1	Views and features for time records.....	89
7.1.2	Creating time records.....	89
7.1.3	The data record window for time records .....	90
7.1.4	Time record calendar .....	96
7.1.5	Billing time records.....	101
7.1.6	Defining hourly rates for addresses and projects.....	103
7.1.7	Time record details in projects and jobs.....	104
7.1.8	User settings for time records.....	104
7.2	Time records in the Web Client .....	106
7.2.1	Project time recording .....	106
7.2.2	Time record calendar .....	109
7.2.3	Time records .....	111
7.3	Expenses in the Desktop Client.....	112
7.3.1	Views and features for expenses.....	112
7.3.2	Expenses in addresses, projects, jobs and appointments.....	113
7.3.3	The data record window for per diem costs.....	114
7.3.4	The data record window for travel costs.....	117
7.3.5	The data record window for expense receipts.....	119
7.3.6	The data record window for lump sum expenses.....	121
7.3.7	Expense settings in the project.....	122
7.3.8	Billing expenses .....	122
7.4	Expenses in the Web Client.....	123
7.5	External services in the Desktop Client.....	124
7.5.1	Views and features for external services .....	124
7.5.2	The External services tab in projects and jobs.....	125
7.5.3	The data record window for external services .....	126
7.5.4	Billing external services.....	128
7.6	External services in the Web Client .....	129
7.7	Reports for addresses, projects and jobs.....	130

7.7.1	Reports for addresses.....	130
7.7.2	Reports for projects.....	134
7.7.3	Time record report for jobs.....	140
7.7.4	Working with reports.....	141
7.7.5	Editing reports.....	141
7.8	Billing in reports (Desktop Client only).....	143
7.8.1	Activating the billing features.....	144
7.8.2	Preparing time records for billing.....	146
7.8.3	Creating items.....	147
7.8.4	Billed data records in the item.....	150
7.8.5	Adding time records to an item.....	151
7.8.6	Item in billed data records.....	154
7.8.7	Project invoicing (with Easy Invoice).....	155
7.8.8	Creating vendor credits (with Easy Invoice).....	159
7.8.9	Billing time records.....	163
8	Other planning views.....	164
8.1	Team planning in the Desktop Client.....	164
8.1.1	The Gantt view.....	164
8.1.2	The workload view.....	167
8.1.3	View options of the interactive planner view.....	168
8.1.4	Creating an interactive planner view.....	169
8.2	Team planning in the Web Client.....	176
8.2.1	Presentation and editing of appointments.....	177
8.2.2	Change display mode and focus.....	178
8.2.3	Change display date.....	178
8.2.4	Change view settings.....	178
8.2.5	Display in map.....	179
8.2.6	Create appointment.....	180
8.2.7	Collapse or expand user list.....	180
8.3	Timeline view in the Web Client.....	181
8.3.1	Licensing.....	181
8.3.2	General.....	181
8.3.3	Options.....	182
8.3.4	Interactions.....	183
8.4	Board view in the Web Client.....	184
8.4.1	Licensing.....	184
8.4.2	General.....	184
8.4.3	Settings.....	185
8.4.4	Interactions.....	186
9	Management Console settings.....	187
9.1	Settings in the Easy Invoice area.....	187
9.1.1	Receipt types for orders.....	187
9.1.2	Vendor credit settings.....	188
9.2	Settings in the Miscellaneous area.....	189

9.2.1	Currencies .....	189
9.2.2	Dashboards .....	190
9.2.3	Documents .....	191
9.2.4	Products.....	192
9.3	Settings in the Project area .....	194
9.3.1	General.....	194
9.3.2	Orders.....	197
9.3.3	Expenses.....	200
9.3.4	Resource planning .....	204
9.3.5	Skills.....	208
9.4	Settings in the Time record area .....	210
9.4.1	General.....	210
9.4.2	Mandatory links .....	212
9.4.3	Calendar.....	213
9.4.4	Hourly rates.....	214
9.4.5	Working hours.....	216
9.5	Settings in the User Management area.....	218
10	Changes in version x5 and newer .....	220
10.1	Database changes (also applies to existing customers).....	220
10.2	Discontinued features in Project x5 .....	221
10.3	New features in Project x5.....	222
10.4	Discontinued database fields in Project x7 .....	222
10.5	New features and fields in Project x11.1.7.....	223

# 1 Introduction

---

With the Project module for CAS genesisWorld, all data, planning and activities are clearly structured in your project from acquisition to completion.

When an opportunity yields an order, you transfer it into a project with a single click. The product items will appear in the project's **order view**. With the Easy Invoice module, you also create receipts for items here such as quotes, confirmations of order and invoices.

In **the tree view and interactive Gantt chart**, you design your project in a flexible job hierarchy. With Project, milestones, predecessors/successors of jobs, resources and working time, as well as risks and goals are also available here.

With the integrated **resource planning, time records, expenses and external services**, you plan and enter **costs and turnover** for addresses, projects and jobs.

**Reports** keep you updated constantly about the status of your projects and jobs.

You can exchange project plans with **Microsoft Project** and **Open Workbench**.

**Templates for projects and jobs** as well as automatic workflows support the unified application and refinement of project management methods.

For scheduling, you also have access to **team planning** views in the Desktop Client and Web Client as well as the **timeline view** and **board view** in the Web Client.

## 1.1 Feature Overview

- Order processing which may be combined with Easy Invoice for creating receipts
- E-mail templates with attachments for company contacts and individual contacts
- Project planning in the tree view with integrated Gantt visualization, project phases, milestones, predecessor/successor dependencies and resource planning
- Exchange of structure, schedule and resource plans with Microsoft Project or Open Workbench
- Control workflows with process templates and extend them when the status changes.
- Time record with hourly rates by user and activity (Type)
- Record of per diem costs, trip expenses, expense lump-sums and expense receipts
- Reports for time records, expenses, external services and resource plans
- Team planning views (Desktop Client and Web Client), timeline view (Web Client) and board view (Web Client)
- Web Client integration; please note that features described in this manual are available in the Desktop Client only unless indicated otherwise.

## 1.2 Specifics with modules and integrations

When using Project, you have to consider certain specific characteristics in combination with other modules and integrations.

The most important features and limitations are described where they apply in this user guide, especially specifics when using CAS genesisWorld Web.

For an overview, see the [Project](#) page under **Working with several modules** on the English version of [hilfe.cas.de](http://hilfe.cas.de).

## 1.3 Note on receipt items

If you are using Project with Easy Invoice, various features for receipt items are available.

Please note that if you have already been using CAS genesisWorld for some time, receipt items may still be called "document items" in your database.

## 2 Quote and order

The following sections describe the features for transferring items from opportunities to projects as well as the features for project items.

- 2.1 Creating a project for an opportunity (page 9)
- 2.2 Adding other opportunities to the project (page 11)
- 2.3 Order tab and project items (page 14)
- 2.4 Creating documents for items (page 33)
- 2.5 Products, prices and discounts (page 35)

### 2.1 Creating a project for an opportunity

When an opportunity yields an order, you create a project for it.

This feature requires the **Insert** right for the **Items** data record type.

✓ Click on the **Create project** button in the opportunity's **Product items** tab.

The screenshot shows a software window titled "Edit IT infrastructure ...". The interface includes a menu bar (File, Edit, View, Insert, Search, Tools), a toolbar with icons for Save&Close, print, and other actions, and a ribbon with tabs for General, Product items, Details, and Dossier. The "Product items" tab is active, displaying a table for "IT infrastructure (won, Walter Brooks, Devemit Ltd.)". The table has columns: Item, Optional, Product no., Product name, Description, Amount, Unit, Price, Disc, and Discount. A mouse cursor is hovering over a "Create project" button located above the table.

Item	Optional	Product no.	Product name	Description	Amount	Unit	Price	Disc	Discount
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	P29	Server L	Server i5	3	pcs.	GBP1,299.00	10.00 %	GBP389.70
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	P32	Client Computer M	Client Computer i7	100	pcs.	GBP899.00	10.00 %	GBP8,990.00
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	02800030	Intranet software	Intranet solution	100	licenses	GBP250.00	10.00 %	GBP2,500.00
			Total						

First, the selection of project templates will open. Select the desired template or click **Continue without a template** to create the project without a template (see chapter "6 Using project and job templates" on page 77).

The opportunity will be closed and a new project will be created.

The project will adopt the opportunity's **Subject**. The **Person responsible** for the opportunity will be transferred to the project's **Responsible (comm.)** field, which is displayed in the **Details** tab. These field values will also be adopted from the opportunity when a project template is used.

The opportunity's customer will be adopted as the project's primary address.

The customer and project will also be entered as the opportunity's primary links. This way it will appear in the associated tree views.

The items adopted from the opportunity will be listed in the project's **Order** tab.

The current date will automatically be entered as the date of the new order items.

The screenshot shows a software window titled 'Edit IT infrastructure ...' with a menu bar (File, Edit, View, Insert, Search, Tools) and a toolbar. The 'Order' tab is active, displaying a table with the following data:

Item	Date	Description	Product	Product number	Status	Quantity	Unit	Price (GBP)	Discount relative (%)
1	05.02.2019	Server i5	Server L	P29	Acquisition	3.000	pcs.	1,299.00	10.00
2	05.02.2019	Client Computer i7	Client Computer M	P32	Acquisition	100.000	pcs.	899.00	10.00
3	05.02.2019	Intranet solution	Intranet software	02800030	Acquisition	100.000	licenses	250.00	10.00
Total (GBP)						208.000			

## 2.2 Adding other opportunities to the project

In the project phase, you create other opportunities resulting from the project directly for that project.

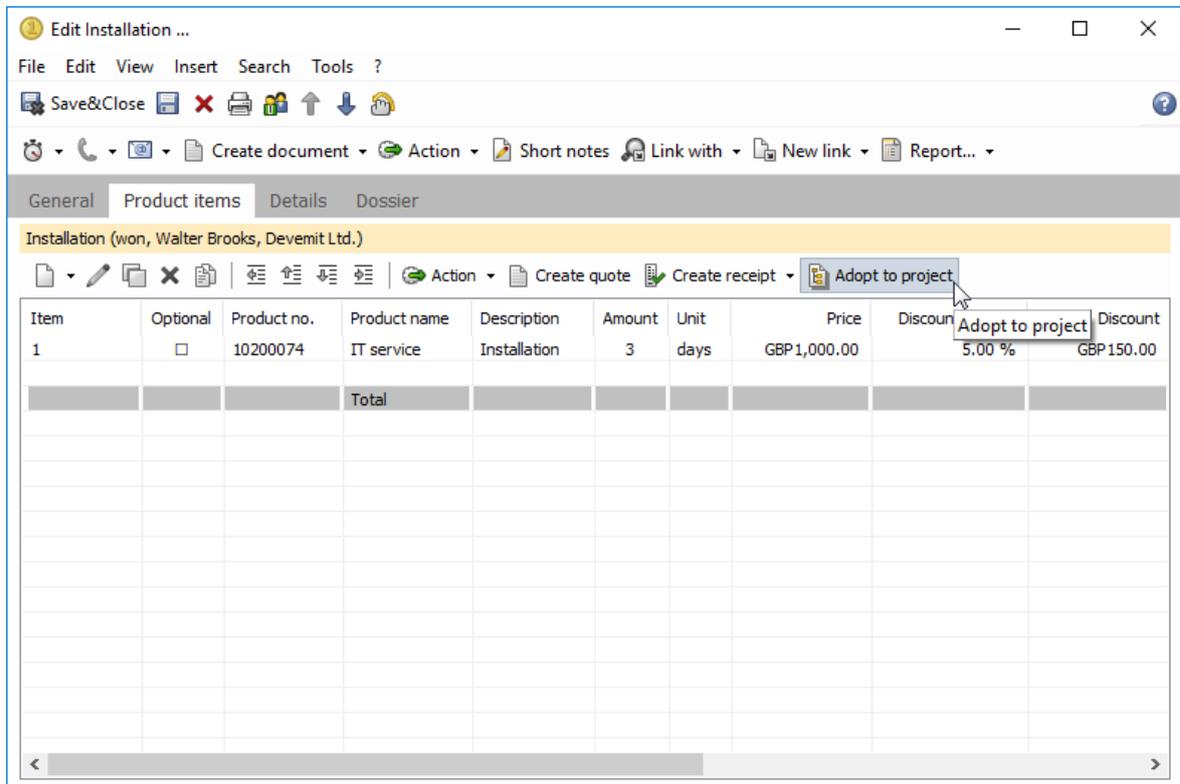
Like the initial conversion of an opportunity into a project, this feature requires the **Insert** right for the **Items** data record type.

Opportunities you create for a project via the **Action** menu will receive primary links to the customer and project. These links will be displayed in the opportunity's **General** tab under **Parent**. The primary links effectively display the opportunity, in addition to the customer's and project's **Dossier**, in the respective **Tree** views, accessible via the **Tree** tabs.

If the opportunity's **Parent** field doesn't display the desired primary link, you can enter it via the associated buttons.

You can adopt to the project the items of any opportunity with a primary link to that project.

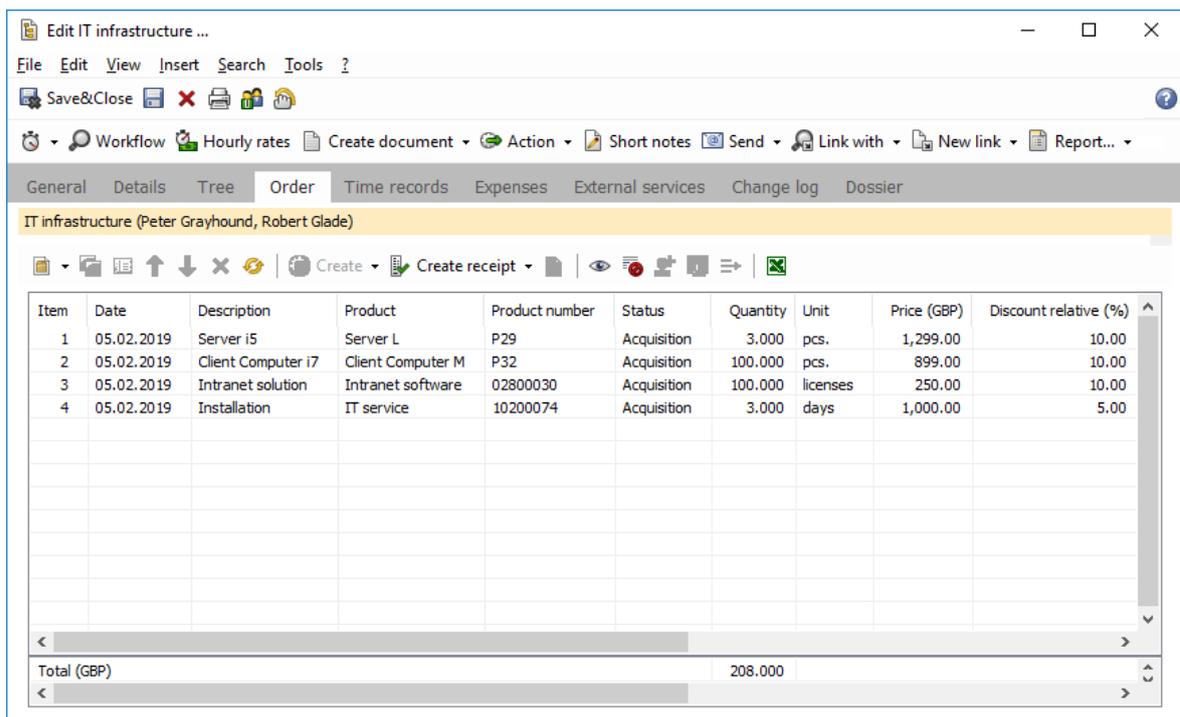
- ✓ To do this, click on the **Adopt to project** button in the opportunity's **Product items** tab.



The project will be opened. All items of the opportunity will be added to the items that already exist in the project.

The current date will be entered as date of the new items.

The **Order** tab will display any items transferred so far.



## Note

When you click on the **Adopt to project** button in the opportunity, all of the opportunity's items will always be added to the project, whether they have already been adopted previously or not. The opportunity's items will not be matched against the project's items before adopting them.

For example, the **Adopt to project** feature will also be available in the first opportunity once you have created a project for it.

Now if you add items to the opportunity and then click **Adopt to project**, in addition to the new items, the items that have already been adopted will be transferred anew.

We therefore suggest that you create a new opportunity for the project for each follow-up order, as described above.

## 2.3 Order tab and project items

In the **Order** tab of the data record window for projects, you can see and edit the list of quote or order items.

Item	Date	Description	Product	Product number	Status	Quantity	Unit	Price (GBP)	Discount relative (%)
1	05.02.2019	Server i5	Server L	P29	Acquisition	3.000	pcs.	1,299.00	10.00
2	05.02.2019	Client Computer i7	Client Computer M	P32	Acquisition	100.000	pcs.	899.00	10.00
3	05.02.2019	Intranet solution	Intranet software	02800030	Acquisition	100.000	licenses	250.00	10.00
4	05.02.2019	Installation	IT service	10200074	Acquisition	3.000	days	1,000.00	5.00
<b>Total (GBP)</b>						3.000			

With Project, quote and order items are available in CAS genesisWorld as a new data record type. The following sections describe views and features for items, the associated data record window as well as the associated features in the project's **Order** tab:

- 2.3.1 Views and features for items (page 15)
- 2.3.2 The data record window for items (page 16)
- 2.3.3 Working with items in the Order tab (page 23)
- 2.3.4 Assigning orders (with Easy Invoice) (page 27)

## Notes

The **Order** tab can be extended with Form Designer like the **General** and **Details** tabs. Fields and other control elements inserted with Form Designer will appear above the item list.

With the Easy Invoice module, features are available for assigning orders to projects and for matching order items with project items (see "2.3.4 Assigning orders (with Easy Invoice)" on page 27).

This requires selecting one or more receipt types as order types in the Management Console, in the **Easy Invoice** area, under **General** (see "9.1.1 Receipt types for orders" on page 187).

### 2.3.1 Views and features for items

The following standard features are available for items.

- **Data record window** with **General**, **Details**, **Tree**, **Change log** and **Dossier** tabs
  - **Currency**

System base currency or user's default currency (if assigned) by default

The first project item defines the project currency, which can then no longer be changed for additional project items.

The project currency may be converted via the **Tools** menu of the project's data record window if this feature has been enabled in the **Miscellaneous** area of the Management Console under **Products** (see "9.2.4 Products" on page 192).
  - **Primary links** to address, project and job, displayed in the tree view and in analyses (with Report module)
  - **General links** to any other data records
- **Creation** in the **New** menu, in the toolbar of data record windows and list views, in the tree view, in the **Order** tab of the data record window for projects as well as via project and job templates
- **Global search** in all fields such as **Description**, **Date** and **Product number**. Configurable via **Settings** > **Search**; search toolbar abbreviation **IT**
- **Views** in the program navigator (list, dossier, tree) and in the link navigator (link list)

## 2.3.2 The data record window for items

The following sections describe fields and features of the data record window for items.

### General

- **Number of items and Interval between items:** You can create multiple items at once at given intervals, for example to split a project into tranches. You specify the interval in days, weeks, months or years. Any further information is transferred to each of the new items. Once the items are created, you can edit each item in its own window.

 **Date:** Enter the planned billing date here. When you create an item from a project, the current date is entered here.

- **Product number and Product:** Select a product by entering a part of its **Number** in the **Product number** field or a part of its **Subject** in the **Product** field. Use the percent character "%" as a placeholder. Select the desired product from the list of suggestions.

When you select a product, its **Number** (> **Product number**), **Subject** (>**Product**), **Unit** and **Description** will be adopted. The valid **Price**, **Contribution margin**, a granted **Discount** (if applicable) and the resulting **Quoted price** will also be entered.

Once a product has been entered, the quick search via the **Product number** and **Product** fields will no longer be available. However, you may change the product via the **Search** window by clicking on the magnifier icon.

## Note

The quick search via the **Product number** and **Product** fields as well as the product selection via the **Search** window will only find products matching the associated filter. By default, these are all products for which the **Active** option has been selected in the **General** tab. You can change the associated filter condition in the Management Console under **Miscellaneous > Products** (see "9.2.4 Products" on page 192).

Once you have selected a product, you may freely edit the product name in the item's **Product** field. Changes don't apply to the product itself but only to the item.

If you are using the Easy Invoice module with the associated default print templates to create receipts like quotes, order confirmations or invoices for product items, the item will be listed in such receipts under this name.

 **Find product:** Here you select a product in the **Search** window. If a product has already been entered, the **Search** window will open with this product as a search result in order to select it with one click. Alternatively, you select a different product in the **Search** window.

When you enter a product via the **Search** window, the **Number, Subject, Unit, Description** (if empty or equal to the description of the previously entered product), **Price, Contribution margin** will be updated. If applicable, the **Discount** will also be updated along with the resulting **Quoted price**.

 **Open product:** If a product was entered, you open its data record window here.

- **Alternative description:** When you select a product with alternative descriptions, these will be available for selection here in addition to the **Standard** description.

Selecting an alternative **Description** will also enter the associated **Quantity unit**.

- **Alternative description preselection:** The first item for a project will adopt the preselection entered for the current user in the Management Console, if applicable (see "9.5 Settings in the User Management area" on page 218).

All additional items will adopt the selection made for the first item.

- **Description:** When a product is entered, its **Description** will also be entered if the associated item field is empty or identical to the description of the previous product. Alternative descriptions will be entered when selected (see "**Alternative description**" on page 17).

- **Quantity / Unit:** Here you enter the quantity and unit. Entering a product will also enter its **Unit**. Selecting an alternative description (translation), will also enter the associated **Unit** (see "**Alternative description**" on page 17).

The **Quantity** modifies the price or discount if special conditions for the entered product were assigned to the primary address of the item via a price or discount list.

Therefore, when the quantity is changed, the price or discount will be updated if a different price or discount has been entered for the new quantity in the price or discount list assigned to the customer.

Because individual prices and discounts don't depend on quantity, they are only adopted once when the product is entered and will not be updated automatically if they should change.

- **Price:** When you enter a product, the associated **Price** will be transferred to the item.

If prices for a product have been entered in multiple currencies, the price and purchase price for the currency selected in the item will be applied. If there is no price in the selected currency for the selected product, no price will be applied.

Prices assigned to the primary address via a price list or as individual prices will be considered (see "2.5 Products, prices and discounts" on page 35).

The valid price will be determined as follows:

- If an individual price for the selected product and **Currency** has been assigned to the item's primary address, it will be used preferably.
- If a list price for the selected product, **Currency** and **Quantity** has been assigned to the item's primary address, it will be used if there is no valid individual price.
- If there is no valid individual or list price, the default sales prices of the product in the selected **Currency** will be used.

You may manually edit the price for an item after it has been determined automatically.

Please note that changing the product or quantity may overwrite manual changes.

- **Currency:** The first item created for a project will determine the project's currency. You can create no additional items with another currency for that project.

You can, however, convert the currency via the project's **Tools** menu, if this feature has been activated for projects (see "**Convert currency**" below).

You may change the currency of the first item as long as the project has no other items.

- **Default currency:** For the first item created for a project, the currency will default to the base currency or to the current user's default currency if he has been assigned a default currency other than the base currency (see "9.5 Settings in the User Management area" on page 218).
- **Price:** If a price in the selected currency exists for the selected product (individual price, list price or default price), it will be applied.

When you select a product for which no price has been entered in the selected currency, the project item will retain the project currency. Prices entered for the product will not be applied to the item in this case.

- **Discount:** A discount specified for the selected product and the customer will still be adopted, even if no price is available for the selected product and currency.
- **Convert currency:** You can convert the currency of a project and associated items via **Change currency** in the **Tools** menu of the project's data record window. Please note that this feature must be activated for projects in the **Miscellaneous** area of the Management Console under **Products** (see "9.2.4 Products" on page 192).

Select the target currency and, if desired, specify a conversion rate. Alternatively, you may keep the currency field values or set them to zero.

Once the project and associated items have been converted, you may edit the currency fields. Via the magnifier, you can reenter the product to update the **Price**, **Contribution margin** and, if applicable, the **Discount** and **Quoted price**.

## Note

As for projects without items, the currency is undetermined for projects with items having different currencies. This can be the case with projects that have been imported from another system as well as with migrated projects that have been created with an earlier version of CAS genesisWorld (because the currency was previously not checked).

You can not create any more items for projects with a mixed currency.

You can also not change the currency of existing items for such projects.

Please note that the calculations of totals in the **Order** tab as well as the **Project items** variable available in associated documents (see "2.4 Creating documents for items" on page 33) are not capable to handle more than one currency.

To resolve the conflict, convert the project's currency via the **Tools** menu (see above) or split the project by creating one new project per additional currency and assigning the items with that currency to that project.

- **Quoted price and discount:** The **Quoted price** field applies the granted discount in addition to list prices and individual prices.

When you enter a product for which an individual or list discount is assigned to the address, that discount will be entered in the item (see "2.5 Products, prices and discounts" on page 35).

The valid discount will be determined as follows:

- If an individual discount for the selected product and **Currency** has been assigned to the item's primary address, it will be used preferably.

- A list discount assigned to the item's primary address for the selected product, **Currency** and **Quantity** will be used when there is no valid individual discount.

A granted discount will be stored as a ratio in the field **Discount relative (%)** and as an absolute value in the **Discount** field.

You can edit each of the **Quoted price**, **Discount relativ (%)** and **Discount** fields.

When you change any of these fields, the other two will be recalculated.

## Note

The quoted price, as displayed, is rounded to two decimals.

Multiplying the quoted price with the quantity does therefore not always yield the item's total sum, because the sum is calculated with the unrounded quoted price.

- **Contribution margin:** When you enter a product, the contribution margin per piece will be calculated from the **Quoted price** less the **Purchase price** stored with the product:

- $cm \text{ (contribution margin per piece)} = \text{Quoted price} - \text{Purchase price}$

The contribution margin per piece, multiplied with the **Quantity**, yields the item's total **Contribution margin** which is specified in the field of this name:

- $CM \text{ (total contribution margin)} = cm * \text{Quantity}$

You can modify the specified contribution margin by entering the desired value in the associated field. The **Contribution margin relative (%)** field will update automatically.

- **Contribution margin relative (%):** The relative contribution margin indicates the **Contribution margin**'s proportion of the **Sum** in most cases.

It indicates otherwise only if the item's sum is null or negative.

- **Sum = 0:** When the item's sum equals null, the relative contribution margin only indicates whether the **Contribution margin** field's value is equal to null (0%), positive (100%) or negative (-100%).
  - **Sum negative:** When the item's sum is negative, the relative contribution margin indicates the contribution margin's proportion of the absolute value of the sum (see example).

Manually changing this value will recalculate the **Contribution margin** field.

## Example

Sum = -100, Contribution margin = 50

⇒ Contribution margin relative (%) =  $50 / |-100| = 50/100 = 50\%$

- **Sum:** The **Quantity** multiplied by the **Quoted price** yields the item's **Sum**.
- **Status:** The status is adopted from the project when an item is created. You may assign a different status to each item. All status options for the type of the associated project are available for selection here.



**Invoiced and Receipt number:** Enter the date of invoicing here and receipt number here. When you create an invoice (receipt with statistic factor 1) for the item via the **Order** tab of the associated project with Easy Invoice (see "**Create receipt**" on page 25) and generate a print document for it, these fields will be entered automatically. Please note that read rights for receipts are required to display the receipt link.

- **Parent:** Here you see and change the primary links of the item. An item must have primary links to an address and a project in order to save it. Each item can also be assigned to a job.

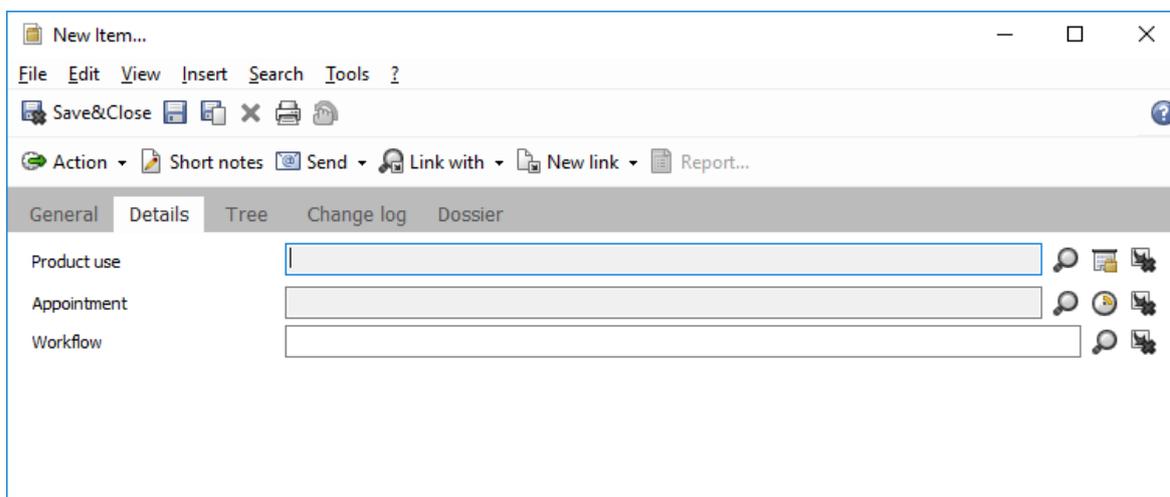
When you change an item's primary address, the **Price, Quoted price, Discount relative (%)** and **Discount** fields will be updated if other conditions are valid for the new primary address.

When you create a job for an item via the **Create** menu in the project's **Order** menu, the item will be associated with the new job via a primary link. In the **Tree** view, an item assigned to a job via a primary link will be displayed under its primary job. By dragging and dropping it in this view, you can assign the item to a different job.

- **Notes:** Here you enter notes for the item.

## Details

Here you can see and change item links to a product use and appointment, which you can also create for multiple items in a project's **Order** tab. Jobs created for the item there will use the job template selected here under **Workflow**.



- **Product use (with Helpdesk):** Here you can see and change the product use for the item. Product uses are available with Helpdesk and are used for recording details of a customer's product use.  
For items without a product use, you can create one by clicking on the associated icon.
- **Appointment:** Here you can see and change the appointment for the item. Create an appointment for an item or assign an appointment to it to schedule associated services.  
For items without an appointment, click on the associated icon to create one.
- **Workflow:** Here you can select a job template. This will be used when a job is created for the item via the associated project's **Order** tab.

For details about creating data records for multiple items via a project's **Order** tab, see "Create" on page 23.

## Notes about duplicating items

When you duplicate an item, the new item's price and discount will be reset.

This way, applicable conditions valid at that point of time that have been entered for the customer via a price or discount list or via individual prices or discounts will be applied.

This is done intentionally because prices and discount are usually subject to change and may differ depending on the customer.

### 2.3.3 Working with items in the Order tab

The following features are available in the item list in a project for creating and modifying items. Some features depend on additional modules, which is indicated where it applies.

- **Total and Contribution margin:** Below the item list, the sums of the order size (**Total**) and the **Contribution margin** of selected items are displayed. When no items have been selected, the sums are calculated for all items.

- **Open:** By double-clicking on an item you open it for editing.

 **New > Item:** Here you create a new item at the selected list position.

 **New > Group:** Here you insert a new top level item group. For item groups, only the **Description**, **Parent** and **Notes** fields are available. The **Details** tab is not displayed for item groups. Select a group and click **New** to insert an item into that group.

 **New > Subgroup:** Here you insert a subgroup in the selected group.

 **Duplicate:** Here you duplicate the item currently selected in the list. The status of any new items created this way is adopted from the project.

 **Split:** Here you split the item selected in the list, for example for the purposes of only partially billing the item in the current month. The **Split items** window opens. Here you enter the date as well as the quantity or volume ratio of the new partial item.

 **Change order and structure:** Use the arrow buttons to change the order of items. With item groups, you can also move items in and out of groups via these buttons.

 **Delete:** Here you delete all selected items. Before the items are deleted you are asked for confirmation.

 **Refresh:** Here you apply changes made to displayed items while the view was open.

 **Create:** Here you create jobs, appointments and product uses for items.

Jobs and appointments created this way will adopt the following item fields.

- **Date:** The item date is taken over as the start or end date of the job or appointment.
- **Number and Product:** The item's **Product** field is adopted as the job's or appointment's subject. Optionally, the item number may be added to the subject.
- **Duration:** The item's **Quantity** determines the job's or appointment's duration. The **Unit** is configured for the item's product in the Management Console. The item's unit is ignored. The unit defaults to **Days** when not configured. With unit **Hours**, jobs last one full day per started person day.
- **Type:** Each product can be assigned to a job or appointment type which will then be applied to jobs and appointments created for associated items.
- **Resource plan:** Resource plans created for jobs amount to the item's **Quantity** of person days or hours. The **Unit** is specified for the product in the Management Console. The item's unit is ignored. The unit defaults to **Days** when not configured.

Please also note sections "Items for jobs" on page 197 and "Items for appointments" on page 198 on the configuration in the Management Console.

 **Jobs for items** can be used for resource planning and to record working time. Here you create a job and resource plan for each selected item not yet assigned to a job.

A primary link to the job will be entered, which you can see and change in the item's **General** tab under **Parent**.

- ✓ At first, the **Select participants** window opens. Select the participant of the jobs and resource plans here.
- ✓ Each item gets a primary link to its job. An appointment assigned to an item in its **Details** tab or in the project's **Order** tab also gets a primary link to the same job.
- ✓ Jobs created for items with a job template selected under **Details > Workflow** will be created along with any data records selected in that template.

 **Items in a job:** In the job's dossier and tree views, as well as in the **Resources and items** tab, you can see associated items.

If a product has been entered for at least one job type in the **Project** area of the Management Console under **Orders > Items for jobs**, the **Create item** button will be displayed in the toolbar of the data record window for a job (see "Items for jobs" on page 197).

Click this to create new items for jobs with a primary project.

 **Appointments for items** can be used for scheduling. Select this to create an appointment for each selected item not already assigned to an appointment.

You can see and change the appointment in the item's **Details** tab.

Alternatively, you can create an appointment for an item or assign an existing appointment to it in its **Details** tab.

 **Item in an appointment:** the appointment's dossier displays associated items.

If a product has been entered for at least one appointment type in the **Project** area of the Management Console under **Orders > Items for appointments**, the **Create item** button will be displayed in the toolbar of the data record window for an appointment (see "Items for appointments" on page 198).

Click this to create new items for appointments with a primary project.

 **Transfer items to a new job:** Here you create a shared job and resource plan for all selected items.

- ✓ At first, the **Select participants** window opens. Select the participant of the jobs and resource plans here.

- ✓ The items get primary links to the new job. Appointments assigned to items in their **Details** tabs or in the project's **Order** tab also get primary links to the job.

 **Product uses for items (with Helpdesk):** Here you create a new product use for each selected item. The project's primary address will be entered as **Customer** of the new product uses. The **Date** of each item will be transferred to the **Delivery on** and **Start of maintenance** fields of the product use created for it. Each product use also adopts the **Product**, **Product number** and **Quantity** of the associated item.

If there is a service agreement with matching currency for the company of the project's primary address, the product uses will automatically be assigned to it. If multiple such service agreements exist, you will be prompted to select one.

Whenever product uses created for items are assigned to a service agreement this way, the service agreement will be opened to display the new product uses. When there is no service agreement the new product uses can be assigned to, they will still be created for the project's primary address but they won't be displayed.

 **Create receipt (with Easy Invoice):** With Easy Invoice, you can create receipts like order confirmations and invoices in CAS genesisWorld via the item list.

- ✓ Select the desired items.
- ✓ Open the **Create receipt** menu and select the desired receipt type.

For invoices and other receipts with the statistic factor 1, after creating the receipt document and saving the receipt, the previously selected project items get the receipt date in the **Invoiced** field and the receipt number in the **Receipt number** field.

 **Create Document:** Here you create documents like quotes for the selected items. To do this, the template selection for documents opens first. The features available here are described in section "2.4 Creating documents for items" on page 33.

- **Options (without Easy Invoice):**

- **Hide billed items:** Here you hide invoiced items, leaving only items in view in which no **Invoiced on** date has yet been entered.
- **Sort items by date:** Here you hide all groups and sort the items by date. Whenever you create a new group, this option is automatically deactivated.

 **Select view (with Easy Invoice):** Here you select whether items will be displayed sorted by group or by date. You may also display or hide order items here (see section "2.3.4 Assigning orders (with Easy Invoice)" on page 27).

 **Hide billed items (with Easy Invoice):** Here you hide all items with an **Invoiced** date.

Click this again to display invoiced items once more.

 **Invoice:** Here you enter the current date in the **Invoiced** field of each selected item.

 **Undo invoicing:** If you have only selected invoiced items, click this to undo invoicing for the selected items by clearing the **Invoiced on** field.

 **Apply date:** Here you open the date selection in order to change the date for all items selected in the list.

 **Assign items to order (with Easy Invoice):** Here you assign selected items to exactly one order item (see section "2.3.4 Assigning orders (with Easy Invoice)" on page 27).

 **Export:** Here you export all of the project's items to Microsoft Excel. Select items first to export only selected ones. Additionally, the following project fields are exported.

- Subject
- Number
- Person responsible (Sales)
- Primary link
- Person responsible ("Contact")

### 2.3.4 Assigning orders (with Easy Invoice)

The following features for assigning orders to projects and for assigning order items to project items are available in the project's item list with Easy Invoice. Users don't need to be assigned an Easy Invoice license to use these features; it is sufficient to have an Easy Invoice license entered in the system.

- **Marking a receipt type as order:** the features for managing orders will be available in the CAS genesisWorld Desktop Client after at least one receipt type has been marked as **Order** in the associated configuration in the **Easy Invoice** area of the Management Console under **General**. Also assign number ranges to the new receipt types under **Number assignment**. See "9.1.1 Receipt types for orders" on page 187 for details.

- **Creating orders:** you can create orders for selected project items via the **Create receipt** menu. For each selected project item, an order item will be created. Each project item will be assigned to the associated order item.

The order will also have a primary link to the project, assigning it to that project.

For project items created later, you may create additional orders this way or assign them to existing order items in the **Orders** view (see below).

- **Assigning orders:** all receipts with an order receipt type and a primary link to the current project will be displayed in the **Project items and order items** view.

To assign an order to a project, enter that project as the primary project of the order.

You can enter the link in the **Parent** field in the **General** tab of the order, or via the **Link with** feature available for the project and order, and selection of **Primary link**.

Please note that, when the primary project of an order is changed, project items of the previous primary project that have already been assigned to that order will lose their assignment.

- **Displaying orders and order items:** via the **Select view** button, you may select one of three views: **Sort items by hierarchy** (structure created via groups), **Sort items by date** and **Display project items and order items**.

The screenshot shows the 'Edit IT infrastructure' window with a table of order items. A 'Select view...' dialog box is open, allowing the user to choose a view. The dialog box has three radio button options: 'Display only project items', 'Sort items by hierarchy', 'Sort items by date', and 'Display project items and order items' (which is selected). The 'OK' button is highlighted.

Item	Date	Description	Product	Product number	Quantity	Unit	Price (GBP)	Discount relative (%)
1	05.02.2019	Server i5	Server L	P29	3.000	pcs.	1,299.00	10.00
2	05.02.2019	Client Computer i7	Client			cs.	899.00	10.00
3	05.02.2019	Intranet solution	Intranet			ences	250.00	10.00
4	05.02.2019	Installation	IT ser			ays	1,000.00	5.00
5	05.02.2019	Installation	IT ser			ays	1,000.00	5.00
<b>Total (GBP)</b>							<b>208.000</b>	

Orders, order items and assigned project items will only be displayed in the **Display project items and order items** view:

The screenshot shows the 'Edit IT infrastructure' window with a detailed view of order items and project items. The table includes columns for Description, Product, Date, Quantity, Unit, Quoted price (GBP), Contribution margin (GBP), and Sum (GBP). The table is organized into sections: Unassigned items, IT infrastructure, and Balance IT infrastructure.

Description	Product	Date	Quantity	Unit	Quoted price (GBP)	Contribution margin (GBP)	Sum (GBP)
Unassigned items							
Installation	IT service	2/5/2019	2.0000	days	950.00	1,900.00	1,900.00
Balance of items that are not assigned						(1,900.00)	(1,900.00)
IT infrastructure		2/5/2019				91,667.30	111,667.30
Server i5	Server L		3.0000	pcs.	1,169.10	3,507.30	3,507.30
Balance Server i5	Server L	2/5/2019	3.0000	pcs.	1,169.10	3,507.30	3,507.30
Balance Server i5			0.0000	pcs.		0.00	0.00
Client Computer i7	Client Computer M		100.0000	pcs.	809.10	80,910.00	80,910.00
Balance Client Computer i7	Client Computer M	2/5/2019	100.0000	pcs.	809.10	80,910.00	80,910.00
Balance Client Computer i7			0.0000	pcs.		0.00	0.00
Intranet solution	Intranet software		100.0000	licenses	225.00	2,500.00	22,500.00
Balance Intranet solution	Intranet software	2/5/2019	100.0000	licenses	225.00	2,500.00	22,500.00
Balance Intranet solution			0.0000	licenses		0.00	0.00
Installation	IT service		5.0000	days	950.00	4,750.00	4,750.00
Balance Installation	IT service	2/5/2019	3.0000	days	950.00	2,850.00	2,850.00
Balance Installation			2.0000	days		1,900.00	1,900.00
Balance IT infrastructure						1,900.00	1,900.00
Sum of order items						91,667.30	111,667.30
Sum of project items						91,667.30	111,667.30
Total balance						0.00	0.00

- **Assigning project items to order items:** with the **Assign items to order** button in the view's toolbar, you assign project items to exactly one order item:

The screenshot shows the 'Edit IT infrastructure' window with the 'Order' tab selected. The main table displays the following data:

Description	Product	Date	Quantity	Unit	Quoted price (GBP)	Contribution margin (GBP)	Sum (GBP)	
<b>Unassigned items</b>								
Installation	IT service	2/5/2019	2.0000	days	950.00	1,900.00	1,900.00	
Balance of items that are not assigned						(1,900.00)	(1,900.00)	
IT infrastructure							91,667.30	111,667.30
Server i5							3,507.30	3,507.30
Server i5							3,507.30	3,507.30
Balance Server i5							0.00	0.00
Client Computer i7							80,910.00	80,910.00
Client Computer i7							80,910.00	80,910.00
Balance Client Computer i7							0.00	0.00
Intranet solution							2,500.00	22,500.00
Intranet solution							2,500.00	22,500.00
Balance Intranet solution							0.00	0.00
Installation							4,750.00	4,750.00
Installation							2,850.00	2,850.00
Balance Installation							1,900.00	1,900.00
Balance IT infrastructure							1,900.00	1,900.00
Sum of order items						0.00	0.00	
Sum of project items						1,900.00	1,900.00	
<b>Total balance</b>						<b>(1,900.00)</b>	<b>(1,900.00)</b>	

The 'Assign items...' dialog box is open, showing the following configuration:

- Order: IT infrastructure (2/5/2019)
- Order item: Installation

- **Undo assignment:** in order to undo the assignment of one or more project items, select the **Unassigned items** option under **Order**:

The 'Assign items...' dialog box is shown with the following configuration:

- Order: Unassigned items
- Order item: (empty)

- **Creating project items:** you may create new project items, assigned to an order item or unassigned, in this view via the **New** button (first icon from the left) in the toolbar.

Select an order item first to create the project item for that order item. The product, price, discount and contribution margin will be adopted from the order item. The quantity will be preset to match the open balance of the order item (see below).

Click **New** without selecting an order item first to create an unassigned project item.

- **Duplicating project items:** you may duplicate existing project items, assigned to an order item or unassigned, in this view via the **Duplicate** button (second icon from the left) in the toolbar.

- **Splitting project items:** you may split a selected project item, assigned to an order item or unassigned, in this view via the **Split** button (third icon from the left) in the toolbar.
- **Deleting project items:** you may delete selected project items, assigned to an order item or unassigned, in this view via the **Delete** button (red cross icon) in the toolbar.
- **Balance:** in the row of an order item to which one or more project items have been assigned, you can see an overview of the ordered and already supplied quantity. In the following example, two out of five days of work have already been done, such that a balance of three days remains:

Description	Product	Date	Quantity	Unit	Quoted price (GBP)	Contribution margin (GBP)	Sum (GBP)
IT infrastructure		2/5/2019				107,849.30	127,849.30
Server i5	Server L		3.0000	pcs.	1,169.10	3,507.30	3,507.30
Server i5	Server L	2/5/2019	3.0000	pcs.	1,169.10	3,507.30	3,507.30
Balance Server i5			0.0000	pcs.		0.00	0.00
Client Computer i7	Client Computer M		120.0000	pcs.	809.10	97,092.00	97,092.00
Client Computer i7	Client Computer M	2/5/2019	100.0000	pcs.	809.10	80,910.00	80,910.00
Balance Client Computer i7			20.0000	pcs.		16,182.00	16,182.00
Intranet solution	Intranet software		100.0000	licenses	225.00	2,500.00	22,500.00
Intranet solution	Intranet software	2/5/2019	120.0000	licenses	225.00	3,000.00	27,000.00
Balance Intranet solution			-20.0000	licenses		(500.00)	(4,500.00)
Installation	IT service		5.0000	days	950.00	4,750.00	4,750.00
Installation	IT service	2/5/2019	3.0000	days	950.00	2,850.00	2,850.00
Installation	IT service	2/5/2019	2.0000	days	950.00	1,900.00	1,900.00
Balance Installation			0.0000	days		0.00	0.00
Balance IT infrastructure						15,682.00	11,682.00
Sum of order items						99,592.00	119,592.00
Sum of project items						83,910.00	107,910.00
Total balance						15,682.00	11,682.00

When the project item total exceeds the order item total, the balance row will turn red.

- **Features with and without order items:** depending on the view mode selected via the eye icon, different features will be available in the view and the associated toolbar. The following features are only available in the default views for project items without order items:
  - The pull-down menu for the **New** button to create item groups is only available without order items. The item groups will only be displayed in the hierarchical view mode. In the mode sorted by date, the hierarchical structure will be visible in the numbering of the items. No hierarchy will be displayed in the mixed mode.

The **New** button for creating individual project items is available in all three view modes.

- The arrows for modifying the sequence of items are only available in the hierarchical view. In the other views, project items are sorted by date or grouped by the associated order item.
- The features for creating jobs, appointments and product uses via the **Create** menu are only available in the modes without order items.
- The **Create document** feature for passing selected items to a document are only available in the modes without order items.
- The **Hide billed items** (list filter), **Invoice/Undo invoicing** (enter current date in the **Invoiced** field) and **Apply date** (select a date and enter it in the **Date** field) features are only available in the modes without order items.
- The Excel export is only available in the modes without order items.

All other features of the toolbar are also available with order items.

- **Order item in the project item:** for each project item assigned to an order item, that order item is displayed in the **General** tab:

The screenshot shows the 'Edit Item' window with the following details:

- General tab:**
  - Created by Peter Grayhound on 2/5/2019 1:48:54 PM; Last changed on 2/5/2019 3:08:34 PM (950)
  - Date: 2/5/2019
  - Status: Acquisition
  - Product number: 10200074
  - Product: IT service
  - Alternative description: Standard
  - Description: Installation
  - Quantity: 3.000
  - Unit: days
  - Price: 1,000.00 (GBP)
  - Quoted price (GBP): 950.00
  - Discount relative (%): 5.00
  - Discount (GBP): 150.00
  - Contribution margin relative (%): 100.00
  - Contribution margin (GBP): 2,850.00
  - Sum (GBP): 2,850.00
  - Invoiced: (empty)
  - Receipt number: (empty)
  - Order: IT infrastructure, 3/7/2019, Installation
  - Parent: Devenit Ltd., Walter Brooks | IT infrastructure | Select job...
- Notes:** (empty text area)

- **Assignment of project and order items to an invoice:** when an invoice is created for project items, each invoice item will be assigned the associated project item and order item.
- **Analysis of the created links:** the links can be analyzed with the Report module.

Ordered, delivered, paid

View Configuration List Export Report

Filter

Gross amount (Sum) Sum (Sum) [Project items] Sum (Sum) [Invoice items] Grouping column

Subject	Gross amount (Sum)	Sum (Sum) [Project items]	Sum (Sum) [Invoice items]
CAS genesisWorld for Devemit Ltd	8,020.60	4,335.86	4,335.86
Consulting Devemit Ltd	13,912.29	1,297.70	1,297.70
Result	21,932.89	5,633.56	5,633.56

The following links are available:

- **1:n Receipt items [Order items] – Items [Project items]:** link between order items and items of the associated primary project. Any number of project items can be assigned to any one order item (cardinality1:n).
- **1:n Receipt items [Order items] – Receipt items [Invoice items]:** link between order items and the receipt items of associated invoices created for project items via the **Order** tab of the project. Any number of invoice items can be created for any one order item (cardinality1:n).

## 2.4 Creating documents for items

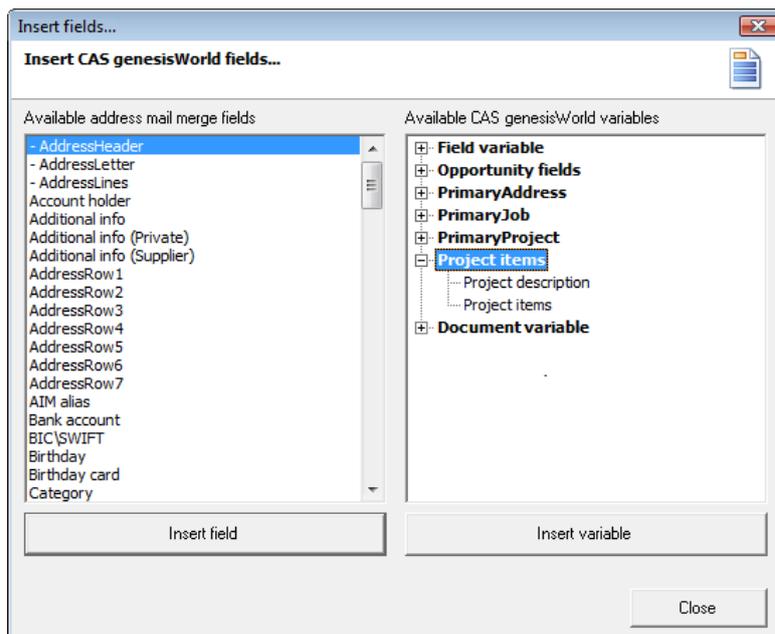
In order to create a document, such as a quote or an invoice, for all or a selection of project items, select the desired items in the project's **Order** tab and click on the unlabelled **Create document** button in the item list's toolbar.

### Note

Please note that items will only be available in Microsoft Word if you first select them and then create the document via the unlabelled **Create document** button in the item list's toolbar.

Additionally, the transfer of items to Microsoft Word must have been activated for the document's **Type** (see "9.2.3 Documents" on page 191).

With Project, the **Project items** variable category is available in Microsoft Word.



- **Project description:** Formatted text from items.
  - The item groups will be adopted as structure.
  - Each item's **Product (Subject)** will be adopted as headline.
  - Each item's **Description** will be adopted as text.
- **Project items:** Formatted item list
  - Number, Product, Quantity, Unit, Price, Sum

## Modifying the field variables for items

Partners can modify the selection and processing of data via the files in the `Infoblocks` directory in the server.

The following files are used:

- `Projektbeschreibung.xml`
- `Produktbeschreibungen.xsl`
- `Projektpositionen.xml`
- `Produktpositionen.xsl`

Please note that the `xsl` files are also used for the field variables of the same names for documents for opportunities (e.g., quotes) and changes will also affect those.

The modification of `Infoblocks` files is described in the current SDK documentation.

## 2.5 Products, prices and discounts

The following fields and features for products are relevant for the Project module:

Created by Peter Grayhound on 2/15/2015 4:37:48 PM; Last changed on 2/1/2019 3:12:29 PM

**Subject** CRM Groupware CP 3.1

Product number 00500040 <sup>1,2</sup> Product group PG10 IT - Software licenses

Price 350.00 GBP Purchase price 260.00

Unit licenses Active

Differing price information		
Currency	Sales price	Purchase price
CHF	430.00	320.00
EUR	400.00	300.00

Description Technical details Customer benefit

The CRM groupware CP 3.1 combines an efficient customer management with features for managing information across your company in a single software solution. CP 3.1 was developed specifically to suit the needs of medium-sized businesses.

Product manager Antonio Matarazzo Deputy Peter Grayhound

Available from Available until

Category Keywords

Billing type

Notes Edit Time stamp

### ■ Prices

- **Price and purchase price (default base currency prices):** These will be applied to project items when this product and the base currency are selected there.
- **Differing price information (foreign currency prices and purchase prices):** These will be applied to project items when this product and the respective currency are selected there. This feature is not available by default and must first be activated in the Management Console (see "9.2.4 Products" on page 192).
- **List prices:** Varying sales prices depending on the quantity can also be entered in a price list for any currency. Differing purchase prices are not supported in price lists; the default purchase price for the respective currency will be applied.

In project items for addresses to which a price list has been assigned, the list price for the respective quantity will be applied if available in the price list for the selected product and currency (see "Price and discount lists" on page 37).

- **Individual prices:** You may also enter individual sales prices (without a differing purchase price) for specific addresses.

If an individual price exists for the product, currency and associated address, it will be applied instead of the default price and any list prices. (see "Price and discount in addresses" on page 38).

- **Quantity unit and description:** These information will be applied to project items for this product by default.
- **Alternative descriptions (and quantity units):** Here you enter individual descriptions and suiting quantity units in foreign languages. If you select a product with alternative descriptions and quantity units in a project item, these will be available there.

This feature is not available by default and must first be activated in the Management Console (see "9.2.4 Products" on page 192).

- **Active:** Here you determine by default whether the product will be available for selection in project items. You may change the associated filter condition (default **Active is identical with true**) in the Management Console (see "9.2.4 Products" on page 192).
- **Billing type:** Default item type for the billing preparation (see "Expenses, external services and time record lump sums" and "Time records by hourly rates" on page 149) and for vendor credit notes (see "Time record billing type configuration for products" on page 160).

## 2.5.1 Price and discount lists

You can see list and customer prices entered for a product in the new **Price lists** tab. List discounts and customer discounts are displayed under **Discount lists**.

Number	Product ▲1	▲2 Minimum amount	Price	Price list	Customer
00500040	CRM Groupware CP 3.1	10	320.00	Reduced	
00500040	CRM Groupware CP 3.1	25	300.00	Reduced	
00500040	CRM Groupware CP 3.1	50	280.00	Reduced	

- **Create new price or discount:** Here you create a new price or discount for the product in an existing price or discount list. You have to select a price or discount list in order to save the price or discount.

You define price and discount lists in the Management Console under **Project > Orders** (see "Price lists and Discount Lists" on page 195.)

## 2.5.2 Price and discount in addresses

In the **Details** tab of the data record window for companies and individual contacts, you can see and change the assigned lists under **Prices and Discounts**. Here you also create individual prices and discounts, valid only for that specific customer.

With the Easy Invoice module, these features are available in the **Billing** tab.

The screenshot shows the 'Edit company NOMOSYS ...' window with the 'Details' tab selected. The 'Prices and discounts' section is highlighted with a red box. It contains the following fields:

- Price list:** A dropdown menu set to 'Reduced' with a 'Create new price' button next to it.
- Discount list:** A dropdown menu set to 'Reduced' with a 'Create new discount' button next to it.

Other visible fields in the 'Details' tab include:

- General:** Number (18423), Preferred language (English), Verified on/by (Friday, May 4, 2018), Peter Grayhound, Number of employees (1,000), Classification (A), fan!-Portfolio group (Fan).
- Bank details:** Account holder (Jack Bauer), Payment method (Bank transfer), IBAN (GB57 BKEN 1000 0031 9268 19), Credit institution (Bank of England), BIC/SWIFT (BKENG82L), Sort code (100000), Bank account (31926819).
- Company data:** Register of companies (HRB 1287546), District court (London), Tax number (5857878678888), Value added tax ID (GB989890000), EBID number.
- Turnover:** Turnover group (Medium), Turnover (223,058.20), GBP, Discount (0.05).
- Last contact:** Contact person (Peter Grayhound), Contact on/via (Friday, February 1, 2019), Appointment, First contact, First contact date.

- **Assign price or discount list:** The **Price list** and **Discount list** fields display the selected lists.
  - 📅 **Display price or discount list:** Here you open the list of special prices or discounts.
- **Create new price or discount:** Here you create an individual price or discount. Individual prices and discounts override prices and discounts from lists. Individual prices and discounts cannot be scaled by quantity.
  - 📅 **Display individual prices or discounts:** Here you open the list of individual prices or discounts.
- **Individual prices and discounts in the Management Console:** In the **Price lists** and **Discount lists** tabs, you can see all individual prices and discounts currently stored in the **Customer prices** and **Customer discounts** tabs.

### 3 Project details

With Project, different features are available in the **Details** tab of the data record window for projects than those available there by default.

The calculation displayed here by default is dropped, since reports based on time records, expenses, external services and resource plans are available in the **Report** menu with the Project module.

The following features supplement the **Details** tab with Project.

#### ■ Project management

- **Project status / Explanation:** The project status is available in the **General** tab without Project as well with CAS genesisWorld Premium. With the Project module, the project status is also displayed in the **Details** tab. Here you can also store a comment about the project status in the **Explanation** field.
- **Lock for time recording:** When this option is selected, no additional time records can be created for the project and the **Actual** field in existing time records for the project can no longer be modified.
- **Project manager (customer):** Link the customer company's project manager here.
- **Responsible (comm.):** Sales executive. When creating receipts for the project with Easy Invoice, this person will be transferred to the receipt field of the same name.
- **Project directory:** Directory for documents or other additional information for the project. You can display this directory in the project's tree view.

- **Last contact**
  - **Last contact on / Contact person / Last contacted via:** These fields are available here without Project as well with CAS genesisWorld Premium. The information is updated when certain appointments, phone calls, e-mails and documents are created for the project. In the Management Console, under **Miscellaneous** > **Last contact**, you specify in which cases a contact is recorded.
- **Expenses**
  - **Expenses mode: By working time, Lump-sum or Inclusive** billing mode.

Select **By working time** here to bill expenses externally by working time. The **Bill expenses externally** option will be set. Any expenses created for the project will be billed externally by default.

Select **Lump-sum** when a lump-sum has been agreed on for expenses. Create an expenses item of the **Lump-sum** type for each appointment to which the lump-sum applies. The entered lump-sum will be entered in that expenses item and it will be billed externally only. The **Bill expenses externally** option will be deactivated. Any other expenses created for the project will not be billed externally by default.

Select **Inclusive** if expenses are included in the agreed price. The **Bill expenses externally** option will be deactivated. Any expenses created for the project will not be billed externally by default.
  - **Lump-sum:** When you select the **Lump-sum** expenses mode, the field of the same name will be available here. This amount will be transferred to all expense records of the **Lump sum** type you create for the project.
  - **Km to be billed:** When you select the **By working time** expenses mode, the **Km to be billed** field will be available here. This value will be transferred to all expense records of the **Travel costs** type you create for the project.

## Notes on the kilometer fields

All kilometer fields may be renamed to use any other unit, such as miles.

- **Bill expenses externally:** with this setting, the **Bill externally** option will automatically be selected for all new expenses you create for the project. This way the recorded net costs are transferred to the **Turnover** field.
- **Billing:** Here you may enter a reference number, a reference mark and a different invoice address. With Easy Invoice, these data will be transferred to any receipts you create for this project.
- **Export:** Here you export the project's work breakdown structure, resource planning included, to Microsoft Project or Open Workbench or import a previously exported project structure. For details about this feature, see section "5.2.4 Exchange with Microsoft Project and Open Workbench" on page 49.

## 4 Using e-mail templates

---

E-mail templates are available for company contacts and for individual contacts. You embed fields of the address and link documents which will be added as attachments.

### Note

The e-mail template selection for addresses offers any **E-mail campaign** documents with the **E-mail template** and **Ticket e-mail template** categories.

Document templates will not be available.



Via the **E-mail templates** button in the toolbar of a contact person's or individual contact's data record window you open the selection of templates.

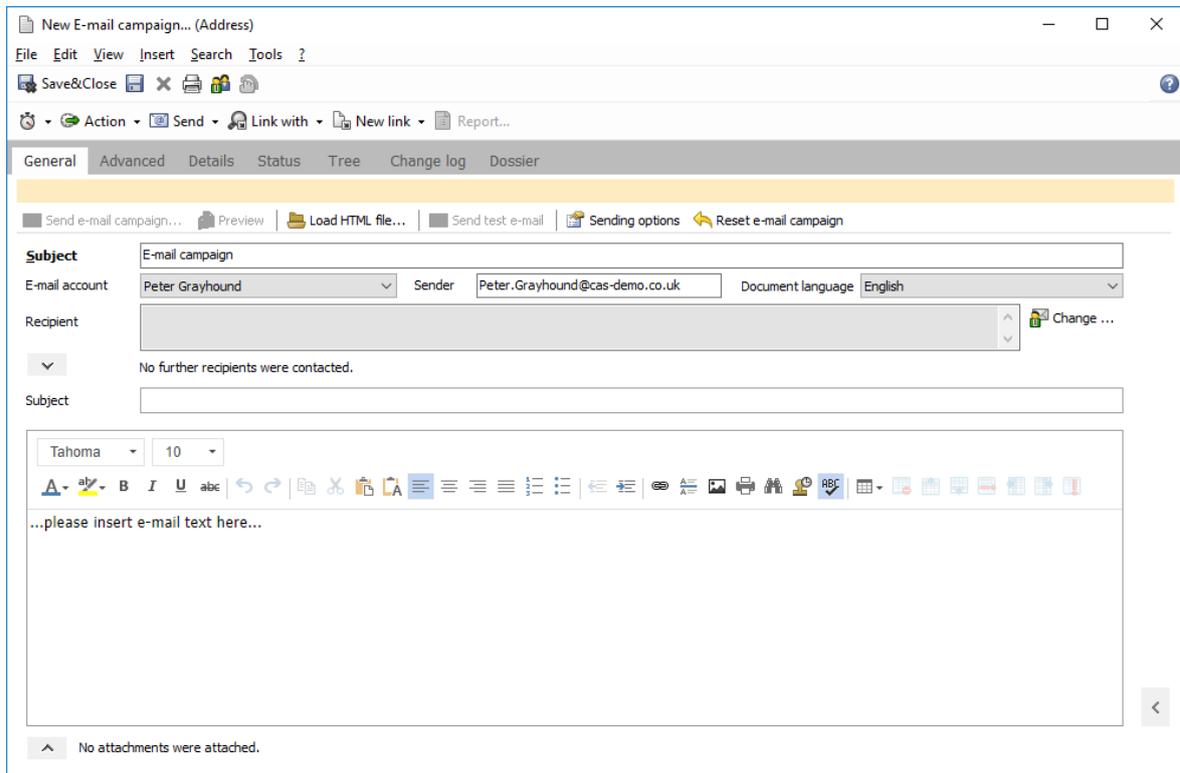
The e-mail will be generated from the selected template, addressed to the desired recipient and opened. You may now edit or extend it, send it and archive it as you wish.

### Creating e-mail templates

You create e-mail templates as documents using the **E-mail campaign** template.

The **E-mail template** category in the document marks it as an e-mail template and makes it available in the e-mail template selection.

- ✓ Select **New > Document** from the **File** menu or select **Document** from the **New** menu in the main window to create a new document.
- ✓ Select the **E-mail campaign** default template and click **OK** to confirm.
  - The data record window for e-mail campaigns will open.



- **Subject:** The document's subject is displayed in the template list.
- **E-mail subject:** Enter the subject for the e-mails to create from the template here.
- **Body:** Use the CAS genesisWorld text editor to create the e-mail body.
- **Insert variables:** Click on the arrow button at the lower right to access address fields and document field variables.
  - Insert address fields in the e-mail subject or body via the **Recipient** list.
  - Insert document field variables in the e-mail body via the **Field variables** list.
- 📎 **Add attachments:** Click on the arrow button at the lower left to display the attachment list. Then click on the **Attachments** button next to that list to edit it.
  - Click **Add attachment** to access the document archive via the global search.
  - Click **Add new attachment** to create a new document and add it to the e-mail template as an attachment.
  - Click **Remove attachment** to remove the selected attachment.
- **Data in the Advanced tab:** In e-mail campaign templates, nearly all fields that you usually edit in the **General** tab can be found in the **Advanced** tab.
- **Mark as e-mail template:** Switch to the **Advanced** tab and select the **E-mail template** category to add the document to the selection of e-mail templates.

## 5 Project and resource planning in the tree view

---

The following sections describe project and resource planning features of the tree view in the Desktop Client and in the Web Client.

- 5.1 Project planning basics (page 43)
- 5.2 Project planning in the Desktop Client (page 44)
- 5.3 Project planning in the Web Client (page 55)
- 5.4 Resource planning basics (page 57)
- 5.5 Resource planning in the Desktop Client (page 59)
- 5.6 Resource planning in the Web Client (page 71)

### 5.1 Project planning basics

Project planning is based on the **Job** data record type.

The following features are available both in the Desktop Client and in the Web Client:

- For scheduling, a tree view of project phases, jobs and milestones with an integrated interactive Gantt chart is available.
- You may assign any number of jobs to a project in a hierarchical structure with an unlimited depth of job levels. A job containing other jobs is called a **project phase**.
- You may insert **milestones** on any level.
  - A milestone represents an important step toward the goal of a project.
  - Technically, a milestone is a job scheduled for a single day.
  - Because milestones are jobs, they appear in job lists and when searching jobs.
  - In the Desktop Client, assign the milestone type to any job to make it a milestone.
  - In the Web Client, insert milestones via the radial menu for the project and jobs.
- You may insert **resource plans** to jobs that are not project phases.
  - For details, see the sections about resource planning on page 57 and following.

The following additional features are available in the Desktop Client only:

- Predecessor-successor links and auto-scheduler
- Export to and import from Microsoft Project and Open Workbench
- Risks and targets for addresses, projects and job

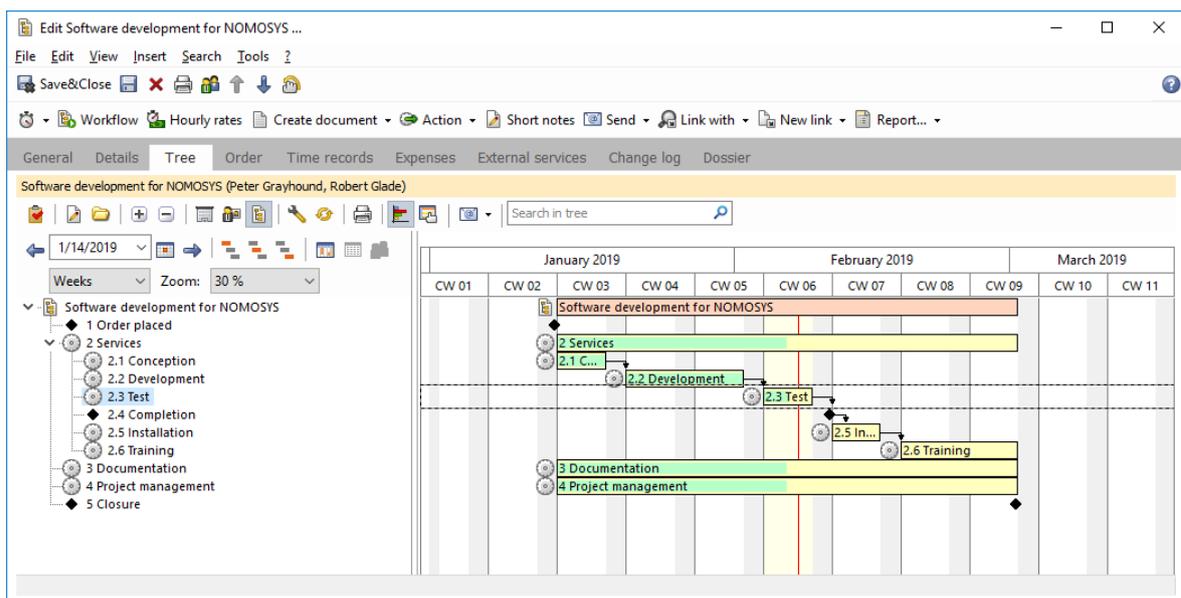
## 5.2 Project planning in the Desktop Client

The following project planning features are available in the Desktop Client.

- 5.2.1 The Gantt chart (page 44)
- 5.2.2 Milestones (page 46)
- 5.2.3 Predecessor and successor (page 47)
- 5.2.4 Exchange with Microsoft Project and Open Workbench (page 49)
- 5.2.5 Risks (page 51)
- 5.2.6 Targets (page 53)

### 5.2.1 The Gantt chart

With the Project module, a Gantt chart is available in the tree view for visual planning.



 **Show or hide Gantt chart:** Here you show or hide the Gantt chart. In the Gantt chart, two additional toolbars are available in which you make settings for the view.

- **Start date, period and zoom:** In the upper left area in the toolbar, you can see and edit the view's start date. Use the two menus below to set the period and zoom level.
  - **Select start date:** Enter the start date or click on the little arrow in the associated field in order to select a date in the calendar.
  - **Select period of time:** As periods of time for scaling the Gantt chart, days, weeks, months, quarters and years are available.
  - **Select zoom level:** Via the zoom level you adjust the scaling. Values of 10-150% (steps of 5) and of 150-750% (steps of 10) are available.

 **Previous period:** Here you set the start date to the previous period.

➔ **Next period:** Here you set the start date to the next period.

🇺🇸 **To current day:** Here you set the start date to the current day.

➤ **Align selected data record at left border:** Here you adjust the start date, so that the start date of the selected data record is displayed to the left of the view.

➤ **Center selected data record:** Here you adjust the start date, so that the selected data record is displayed in the middle of the view.

➤ **Align selected data record at right border:** Here you adjust the start date, so that the start date of the selected data record is displayed to the right of the view.

📅 **Adopt to current period:** Here you extend any jobs in the selected sub-tree to the currently selected period, e.g. the current week if you have selected weeks as period.

If the project is selected, it is extended together with any associated jobs.

- **Edit schedule:** Using the mouse, you edit the duration of the displayed projects, jobs and appointments and the deadlines of tasks via drag-and-drop.

⏪ **Edit duration at start:** In order to edit the start and duration at the same time in a data record, leaving the end unchanged, click at the left border of the associated bar, hold the mouse button and move the border to the desired place.

⏩ **Edit duration at end:** In order to edit the end and duration at the same time in a data record, leaving the start unchanged, click at the right border of the associated bar, hold the mouse button and move the border to the desired place.

📏 **Move:** In order to move a data record, leaving the duration unchanged, click at the bar in the middle and drag it to the desired place.

You can move data records of a smaller duration by pressing the [Alt] key first and holding it while you are moving the data record.

- **Detail level during moving:** The step width during moving depends on the period setting. Hold [Alt]+[V] in order to adjust data records in smaller steps.

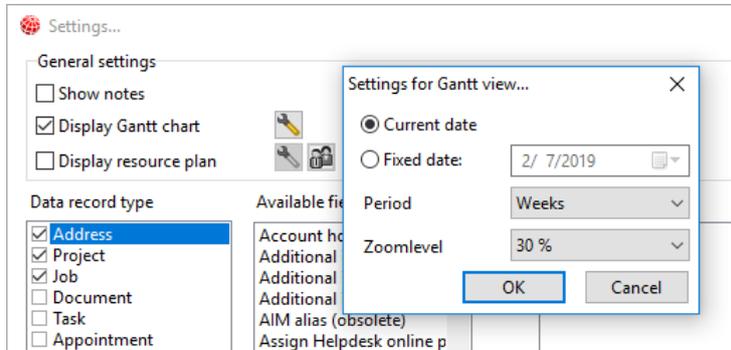
**Days, weeks:** 1 day; with [Alt]+[V] 1 hour.

**Months, quarters, years:** 1 week; with [Alt]+[V] 1 day.

## Note

Please note that it is not possible to edit appointments in the Gantt view if you are using the Exchange sync module.

- **Settings for Gantt view:** In the settings for the tree view, you specify whether the Gantt chart is displayed when the view opens.



- 🔧 Here you open the **Settings for Gantt view** window in order to edit the Gantt chart's presets for date, period and zoom level.

In the project planning view in the Web Client, a project Gantt chart is also available (see "5.3 Project planning in the Web Client" on page 55).

## 5.2.2 Milestones

You can include milestones in your planning as jobs.

- Milestones are jobs of a specific type. You specify the type for milestones in the Management Console under **Project > General** (see "Settings" on page 194).
- You can open and edit milestones in the data record window for jobs.
- When the milestone type is assigned to a job, its duration will be set to null. The end date cannot be modified as long as the job has the milestone type.
- Milestones are displayed as a black diamond in the tree view and in the Gantt chart.

Proceed as follows to create a milestone in the tree view.

- ✓ Use the mouse to select the desired project.
- ✓ Press the [Ins] key in order to create a new job in the project, name the job and confirm by clicking **OK**.
- ✓ By right-clicking on the job, open the associated context menu. In its **Type** sub-menu, select the milestone type.
- ✓ Via drag-and-drop in the tree view, you can move the new milestone to the sub-tree of another job.
- ✓ Via drag-and-drop in the Gantt chart, you can move the milestone to the desired date.

In the project planning view in the Web Client, you can also see and edit milestones (see "5.3 Project planning in the Web Client" on page 55).

### 5.2.3 Predecessor and successor

In the data record window for jobs as well as in the Gantt chart in the tree view, you can see and edit four kinds of dependencies between jobs. In this way, you define the sequence in which the jobs must be completed. In addition, you can specify a minimum interval between jobs in work days.

- **Predecessor Start-Start:** B may not begin before A has begun.
- **Predecessor Start-End:** B may not end before A has begun.
- **Predecessor End-Start:** B may not begin before A has ended.
- **Predecessor End-End:** B may not end before A has ended.

You may adopt time relations from project and job templates as predecessor/successor links (see "6.2 Editing a template" on page 79).

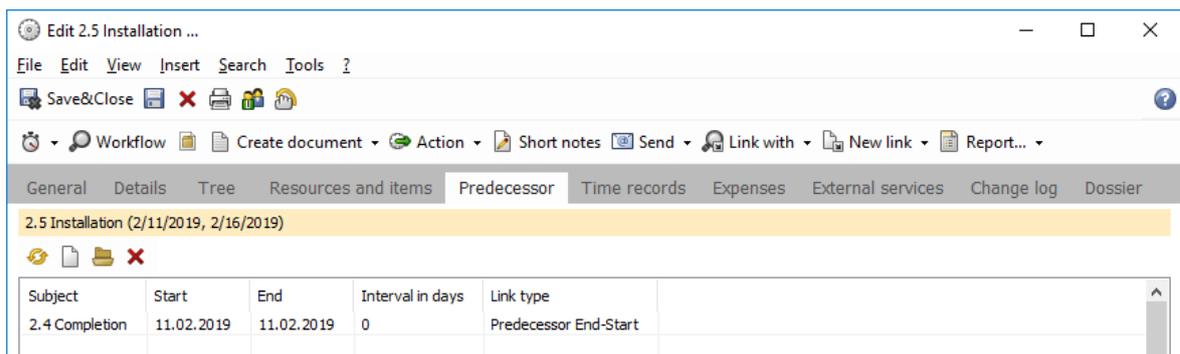
In the Web Client, predecessor and successor links are not available.

#### Note

A job will only be selectable as another job's predecessor if both jobs share the same primary project.

### Predecessor and successor in a job

The **Predecessor** tab in the data record window for jobs displays any jobs that the current job depends on.



 **Refresh:** Here you reload the view in order to apply changes made at a different workplace or in the tree view.

 **Create new link:** Here you create a new link to a job on which the current job should depend as the other job's successor. You select the link type, job and minimum interval in work days.

 **Edit link:** Here you edit the minimum interval in work days for the selected link.

 **Delete link:** Here you delete the selected link.

## Predecessor and successor in the Gantt view

In the Gantt view, the dependencies between jobs are displayed through arrows.

### Note

Predecessor/successor links are only displayed in the Gantt view when both linked jobs are visible. If a linked job is outside the visible date range, no line is displayed for it.

🔗 **Set predecessor/successor relation in the Gantt chart:** In the Gantt view, you set dependencies of the **Predecessor End-Start** type via drag-and-drop using your mouse. Proceed as follows.

- ✓ Move the mouse pointer over the inner right border of the desired predecessor until the mouse pointer switches to the **predecessor/successor** mode.

Hold the `[Ctrl]` key in order to link short jobs in this fashion.

- ✓ Click on the end of the desired predecessor and hold the mouse button until the **End-Start relation** overlay box appears.
- ✓ Holding the mouse button, move the mouse pointer to the desired successor.
- ✓ Hold the mouse button until the successor's subject appears in the overlay.
- ✓ Release the mouse button in order to set the link.

You can see and edit the link in the **Predecessor** tab in the data record window of the successor, i.e. the second job. Here you can specify a minimum interval between both jobs.

- **Display and correction of inconsistencies:** If the condition of a link is not satisfied, the corresponding arrow is displayed in red.
  - Right-click anywhere in the tree view and select **Update project plan** from the context menu in order to correct any inconsistencies.
  - Right-click a job in the tree view and select **Update project plan from here on** from the context menu in order to correct inconsistencies in jobs directly or indirectly dependent on the job on which you clicked.

## 5.2.4 Exchange with Microsoft Project and Open Workbench

With the permission to import and export data, you can import and export project plans.

### Note

You may grant users the **Import** and **Export** permissions in the **User Management** area of the Management Console, in the **Other rights** tab of the user's **Properties** view.

- **Source & target systems**
  - Microsoft Project
  - Open Workbench
- **Transferred data and limitations**
  - **Project structure and schedule:** In Project and Open Workbench, projects and project phases start with the first associated job and end with the last associated job. If this should not be the case in an imported project, the start and end of the project and of all project phases are adjusted accordingly.
  - **Milestones**
  - **Predecessor/successor relations between jobs:** When you export projects to Microsoft Project, only predecessor/successor dependencies between jobs and project phases of the same hierarchy level will be transferred.
  - **Resources and completion grades**

### Features in the context menu of the project list

- **Import from Microsoft Project or Open Workbench:** Here you import a project plan that was saved in the XML format in Microsoft Project or Open Workbench. If the project was previously exported from CAS genesisWorld, you can either update the corresponding project or create a new project.
  - **Update:** Any changes made to jobs will be transferred. Any changes made to the jobs in CAS genesisWorld in the meantime will be overwritten. New jobs will be created. Deletions will not be adopted.
  - **Create new:** A new project is created with all associated jobs.
- **Export > Export to Microsoft Project/Open Workbench:** Here you export a project plan in the XML format of the target systems. This way you can export only one project at a time. If the target system is installed, it is started and the exported project plan is opened.

## Features in the Details tab of the project record

- **Export and check out:** When you export a project in the **Details** tab of the associated project, it will be checked out. This way, other users can see that it has been exported to be processed in another application.

- Your user name is written in the **Checked out by** field.
- The date and time are written in the **Checked out on** field.
- The target system and the target file are stored with the project.

 **Export to Microsoft Project:** By clicking on the button you export the project plan in the XML format of Microsoft Project. The project plan will be opened in Microsoft Project if the application is installed.

 **Export to Open Workbench:** By clicking on the little arrow to the right of the export button, open the associated menu and select **Export to Open Workbench** to export the project plan in the XML format of Open Workbench. The project plan will be opened in Open Workbench if the application is installed.

 **Import:** Here you import a project plan from Microsoft Project or Open Workbench.

- **Check in and update:** If you have previously checked out the project, it will be checked in again and the project plan will be updated.

The **Checked out by** and **Checked out on** fields as well as the stored target system and target file will be reset.

All changes made to jobs will be adopted. Changes that you have made to the jobs in CAS genesisWorld in the meantime will be overwritten. New jobs will be created. Deletions will not be adopted.

- **Create new:** If you import a project plan into a project from which you haven't checked out that project plan, the structure will be created anew in the target project.

## 5.2.5 Risks

You record risks for addresses, projects and jobs. You schedule counteractions as tasks that are linked to the risk and adopt its primary links.

### Views and features for risks

The following standard features are available for risks.

- **Data record window** with **General**, **Tree**, **Change log** and **Dossier** tabs
  - **Type and Status** for unambiguous labelling
  - **Primary links** to address, project and job, displayed in the tree view and in analyses (with Report module)
  - **General links** to any other data records
- **Creation** in the **New** menu, in the toolbar of data record windows and list views and in the tree view
- **Global search** in all fields such as **Subject**, **Indicators** and **Notes**. Configurable via **Settings > Search**; search toolbar abbreviation **RI**
- **Views** in the program navigator (list, dossier, tree) and in the link navigator (link list)

### The data record window for risks

The screenshot shows a software window titled "Edit Resource bottleneck ...". The window has a menu bar (File, Edit, View, Insert, Search, Tools) and a toolbar with icons for Save&Close, Print, Copy, Paste, Undo, Redo, and a help icon. Below the toolbar is a navigation bar with tabs: General (selected), Tree, Change log, and Dossier. The main content area displays the following information:

- Created on:** 1/25/2019 12:59:07 PM from Peter Grayhound
- Subject:** Resource bottleneck
- Indicators:** Multi-project resource planning view
- Response:** Outsource project tasks
- Person responsible:** Michael Green
- Probability:** Medium
- Impact:** High
- Type:** Availability of resources
- Status:** open
- Parent:** NOMOSYS, Jack Bauer (linked to Software development for NOMOSYS, 2.2 Development)
- Notes:** A text area containing a timestamped note: "----- Fri, 1/25/2019 12:59 PM (Peter Grayhound) ----- Due to high resource utilization during the project period, resource bottlenecks could occur. Project deadlines must be met at all costs." There are "Edit" and "Time stamp" icons next to the notes area.

- **Subject:** You may freely modify the subject as in any data record.
- **Indicators:** Specify here what evidence can be used to measure the risk's dimension.

- **Response:** Here you can see and modify the list of counteractions that you create as tasks linked to the risk. All tasks linked to a risk are treated as counteractions regardless of the link type.
- ➡ **Create new counteraction:** Click on the **Follow-up action** button at the very left of the lower toolbar in the data record window of the risk in order to create a new counteraction.
- 🔍 **Select a counteraction by searching:** Here you open the search window to select a task. Mark the desired task in the list and enter it by clicking **Accept & Close**.
- 📋 **Open list:** Here you open a list of all counteractions recorded for the risk. You can also see a list of all counteractions recorded for the risk in the **Dossier** tab.
- 🗑️ **Delete links:** Here you delete the links to all displayed counteractions. You remove single counteractions in the dossier.
- **Person responsible:** Specify the person responsible for the risk here.
- **Probability:** Specify the probability for the risk's occurrence. In the default setting, the **High, Medium, and Low** options are available for selection here.
- **Impact:** Specify the risk's severity here. In the default setting, the **High, Medium, and Low** options are available for selection here.
- **Type and Status:** For classifying risks via type and status, the following input helps are available.
  - **Type:** technical, personell, unforeseen circumstances, availability of resources
  - **Status:** open, closedFor every type, the **Open** and **Closed** status options are available.
- **Parent:** Here you can see and alter the primary links as in other data records.
- **Notes:** Here you enter notes for the risk.

## 5.2.6 Targets

You record targets for addresses, projects and jobs.

### Views and features for targets

The following standard features are available for targets.

- **Data record window** with **General**, **Tree**, **Change log** and **Dossier** tabs
  - **Type and Status** for unambiguous labelling
  - **Primary links** to address, project and job, displayed in the tree view and in analyses (with Report module)
  - **General links** to any other data records
- **Creation** in the **New** menu, in the toolbar of data record windows and list views and in the tree view
- **Global search** in all fields such as **Subject**, **Description** and **Notes**. Configurable via **Settings > Search**; search toolbar abbreviation **TARG**
- **Views** in the program navigator (list, dossier, tree) and in the link navigator (link list)

### The data record window for targets

Edited: Documentation of customizing ...

File Edit View Insert Search Tools ?

Save&Close [Print] [Up] [Down] [Refresh]

Action [Short notes] [Send] [Link with] [New link] [Report...]

General Tree Change log Dossier

Created by Peter Grayhound on 1/14/2019 11:32:00 AM

**Subject** Documentation of customizing

Description Extensive documentation as reference for the customer and for future projects

Nominal 100 Unit Percentage

Actual 60 % achieved 60

Set on Monday, January 14, 2019 Person responsible Ben Miller

Set for Friday, March 1, 2019

Type Project goal Status

Parent NOMOSYS, Jack Bauer Software development for NOMOSYS 3 Documentation

**Notes** Edit Time stamp

----- Mon, 1/14/2019 11:31 AM (Peter Grayhound) -----  
As a reference for the customer as well as for future projects, we will create a complete and exact documentation of all customizations.

- **Subject:** You may freely modify the subject as in any data record.
- **Description:** Use the description to supplement the subject.

- **Nominal:** Enter the nominal value here that constitutes the target to be achieved.
- **Actual:** Update the actual value here whenever it changes.
- **Unit:** Select one of the units **Duration**, **Currency**, **Percent** or **Number** here.

The display mode of the **Nominal** and **Actual** fields and the behavior when entries are made adapt to the selected unit.

The **% achieved** field is updated automatically, when entries are made in the **Actual** field. It always displays the proportion of the **Actual** value in the **Nominal** value.

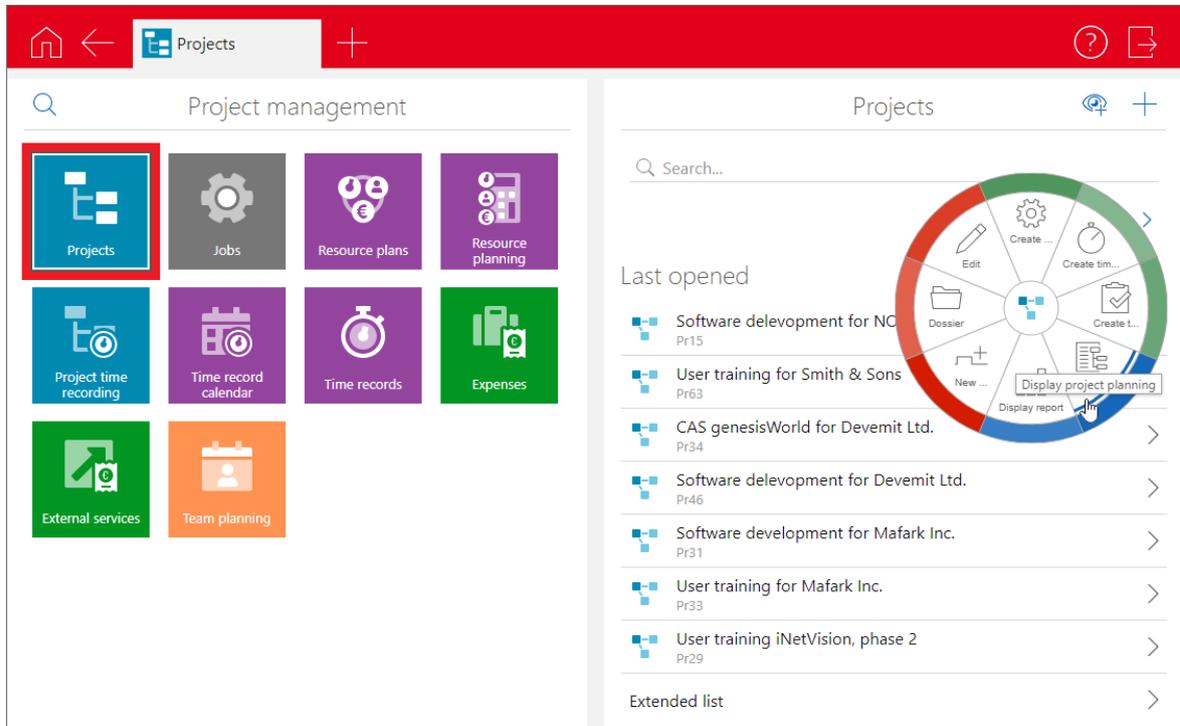
- **Set on:** Enter the date on which the target was set here.
- **Set for:** Enter the date on which the target should be achieved here.
- **Person responsible:** Specify the person responsible for achieving the target here.
- **Type and Status:** For classifying targets via type and status, the following input helps are available for the **Type** field in the default setting.
  - Project target, business objectives, personal goal, internal target, acquisition target

No input helps are supplied for the **Status** field in the default setting.

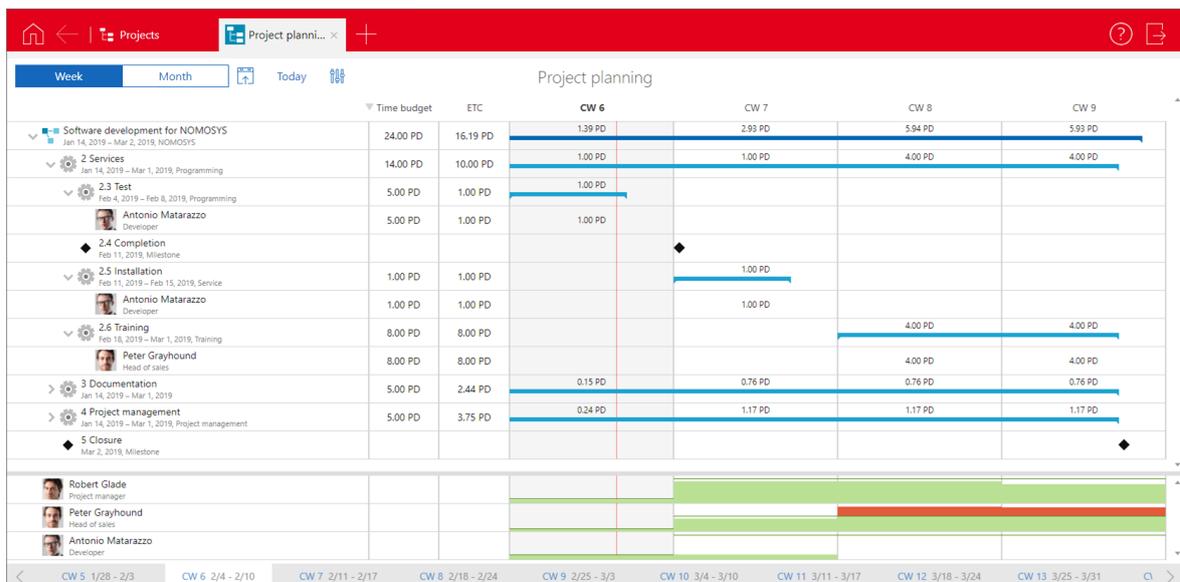
- **Parent:** Here you can see and alter the primary links as in other data records.
- **Notes:** Here you enter notes for the target.

### 5.3 Project planning in the Web Client

In the Web Client, you can open the **Project planning** view via **Display project planning** in the radial menu or action menu for a project.



The **Project planning** view includes a tree view, Gantt chart and overview of planned workload.



- Using the radial menu for the project, jobs and employees in the tree view ...
  - ... you can edit the displayed structure, ...
  - ... define milestones, ...

- ... assign new workload ...
- ... and distribute existing workloads. For this action, you specify the portion of the workload (**ETC**) to distribute and the **User** to distribute it to.

The other planning values of the resource plan are split in the same proportion.

- Click on the slider icon to open the view's settings and configure the number of periods and the resource plan fields for workload key figures to display as columns:
  - **Total estimate**: Current planning of recorded working time **Actual** plus **ETC**.
  - **Actual**: Recorded working time.
  - **ETC**: Currently planned ETC For manual planning, the sum of working time per interval.
  - **Employee's ETC**: Where appropriate, this is the deviating estimate for **ETC**, estimated by the respective employee.
  - **Time budget remaining**: **Time budget** minus any accountable **Value**.
  - **Value**: Externally accountable recorded working time.
  - **Time budget**: Customer's authorized working time
  - **Deviating working time**: Originally **Planned working time** minus the current **Total estimate**. Differences are due to time records exceeding values planned for the associated week or month or additionally cleared workload (**ETC**).
  - **Planned working time**: Originally planned working time.
- In the interactive Gantt chart, you can see:
  - Project and job durations and milestone dates
  - ETC for the project, each job and each resource plan per week or month

You may edit the schedule via drag and drop.

- The colored workload charts at the bottom right display availability, global utilization, remaining availability and overload of project members, including:
  - Open resource plans
  - Appointments for which the **Nominal costs** option has been selected.
  - Holidays

Click on a chart segment to display the associated figures.

Click on the question mark at the top right to open the online help pages for more details.

## 5.4 Resource planning basics

Resource planning is based on the **Resource plan** data record type.

Please note that the information on completion grades and completion of jobs described on the following page applies to the Desktop Client only.

All other information listed below applies to both the Desktop Client and the Web Client.

- A **resource plan** allocates working time in a job to a user.
  - The working time is given in person days (PD). By default, a person day lasts 8 hours. You determine the duration of a person day in the Management Console under **Time record > General** (see "9.4.1 General" on page 210).
  - The working time is entered as externally billable **Time budget** and automatically transferred to the **ETC** field in new resource plans.

Also see "5.5.3 The data record window for resource plans" on page 62.

- Workloads are first distributed equally over the working time during the job's remaining duration by week. Decreasing the duration will increase the workload per week and vice versa.
  - With version x11.1.7, an optional manual planning mode has become available (see „10.5 New features and fields in Project x11.1.7“ on page 223 for details).
  - When using the manual mode, workloads will initially still be distributed evenly over the working time during the job's remaining duration by week.
  - Once you enter workload for a job in the **Resource planning** app in the Web Client, the manual planning replaces the initial automatic plan. Changing the task duration will then no longer redistribute the workload for this job.
  - In the detail view of a **plan** (of a job and associated resource plan), you can find a button for resetting the manual distribution. The total workload entered as **ETC** will be retained, but will automatically be distributed evenly once more.

For more details, see „5.6 Resource planning in the Web Client“ on page 71.

- In **time records** for a job in which the user has a resource plan, the following values from the resource plan are displayed.
  - **ETC (estimate to complete)**: Remaining working time according to the current planning. If it becomes null, it is only possible to record more time for the resource plan when overbooking is permitted unless additional ETC is cleared (see "Booking of time recordings" on page 206).

Clearing additional ETC by raising the value of the resource plan's **ETC** field requires the **Resource planning** right (see "**Rights**" on page 58).

- **Actual**: Total of recorded **actual** hours from all the user's time records in the job which are relevant to accounting.

- **Time budget remaining:** Time budget minus total of recorded **charged** hours.
- **Charged:** Total of recorded **charged** hours from all the user's time records in the job which are relevant to accounting.

With manual planning, each time record not only reduces the **ETC** total but also the planned hours in the associated week or month.

You will find more about recording time for resource plans under "**Job**" on page 92.

- **Relevance to accounting:** A time record's relevance to accounting depends on its type. To create time records for resource plans, you must configure types which are relevant to accounting in the Management Console (see "**Booking settings for all time recording types**" on page 207).

For each time record type relevant to accounting, you also specify whether the **Actual** hours of each time record should automatically be entered as **Charged** as long as the total of **Charged** hours in the resource plan does not exceed the **Time budget**.

- **Completion grade and completion of jobs:** Jobs have a completion grade which can be modified in the **Resources and items** tab, in the Gantt chart and in time records.

If the completion grade is set to 100%, the first available completion status is automatically set in the job. When you assign a completion status to a job, the completion grade will automatically set to 100%. All associated resource plans will receive the same completion status. You will be asked whether the resource plans' **ETC** should be set to null.

In the Management Console, you select the status options which mark the completion of a resource plan or job. Here, you also specify whether remaining time budget will be added to the **Charged** value of the last time record that was relevant to accounting if time was already recorded for the resource plan ("**Externally bill remaining time budget when completing a job**"). This setting also applies if you specify that remaining **ETC** should not be set to null.

- **Rights:** The **Resource planning** right is required for resource planning. You can assign it in the Management Console under **User Management** in the **Other rights** tab of the user **Properties** view. Only with this right can users create, open and edit resource plans as well as modify a resource plan's **ETC** value in resource planning views without opening that resource plan. Users without this right can record time for their own resource plans. To record time for resource plans, writing permissions for the fields **Total estimate**, **ETC**, **Actual**, **Time budget remaining** and **Charged** are required.

## 5.5 Resource planning in the Desktop Client

This section describes the resource planning features in the Desktop Client.

- 5.5.1 Views and features for resource plans (page 59)
- 5.5.2 Resources and items in a job (page 60)
- 5.5.3 The data record window for resource plans (page 62)
- 5.5.4 Resource planning in the tree view (page 64)
- 5.5.5 Settings for resource planning in the tree view (page 66)
- 5.5.6 Resource planning for multiple projects (page 68)
- 5.5.7 Completion grade in the Gantt chart (page 70)

### 5.5.1 Views and features for resource plans

The following standard features are available for resource plans.

- **Data record window** with **General**, **Change log** and **Dossier** tabs
  - **Primary links** to address, project and job, displayed in the tree view and in analyses
  - **General links** to any other data records
- **Creation** in the **New** menu, in the toolbar of data record windows and list views, in the tree view, in the **Resources and items** tab of the data record window for jobs as well as via project and job templates
- **Global search** in all fields such as **Subject** and **User**. Configurable via **Settings > Search**; search toolbar abbreviation **RP**
- **Views** in the program navigator (list, dossier, tree) and in the link navigator (link list)

## 5.5.2 Resources and items in a job

In the **Resources and items** tab of the data record window for jobs, you can see and edit the completion grade as well as any resource plans and items for the job.

3 Customizing (1/19/2019, 2/1/2019)

% completed: 50

**Resources:**

User	Time budget	Time budget remaining	Actual	Charged	% used	Total estimate	ETC	Employee's ETC	Reason
Peter Grayhound	3 PD, 0 hrs, 00 min	3 hrs, 00 min	2 PD, 5 hrs, 00 min	2 PD, 5 hrs, 00 min	87.50	3 PD, 0 hrs, 00 min	3 hrs, 00 min	0 hrs, 00 min	Completed.
Antonio Matarazzo	5 PD, 0 hrs, 00 min	3 PD, 6 hrs, 00 min	1 PD, 2 hrs, 00 min	1 PD, 2 hrs, 00 min	25.00	5 PD, 0 hrs, 00 min	3 PD, 6 hrs, 00 min	0 hrs, 00 min	
Sum	8 PD, 0 hrs, 00 min	4 PD, 1 hrs, 00 min	3 PD, 7 hrs, 00 min	3 PD, 7 hrs, 00 min	0.00	8 PD, 0 hrs, 00 min	4 PD, 1 hrs, 00 min	0 hrs, 00 min	

**Items:**

Date	Description	Product	Product number	Status	Quantity	Unit	Price	Discount relative (%)	Discount	Contribution margin	Quoted price	Sum
1/15/2019	Development	Development	10200074	In Process	3.000	days	£1,000.00	0.00	£0.00	£3,000.00	£1,000.00	£3,000.00
1/22/2019	Development	Development	10200074	In Process	5.000	days	£1,000.00	0.00	£0.00	£5,000.00	£1,000.00	£5,000.00
Sum					8.000					£8,000.00		£8,000.00

## Completion grade

You assign completion grades to jobs from 0 to 100 percent in steps of 25.

- **Completing a job:** Set the completion grade to 100% or assign a completion status. Completing a job via the status will set the completion grade to 100%. Completing a job via the completion grade will assign the first available completion status.
  - All associated resource plans will receive the same completion status.
  - You will be asked whether the resource plans' **ETC** should be set to null.
  - With the **Externally bill remaining time budget when a job is completed** setting the **Time budget remaining** of each resource plan for which time has already been recorded will be added to the **Charged** hours of the last associated time record relevant for accounting (see "General" on page 204).

## Resources

This list displays all resource plans in a job.

- **Open:** Double-click an entry to open it in its data record window.
- 📄 **Add:** Here you create a new resource plan for a job.
- ✖ **Delete:** Here you delete the selected resource plan. Time records already created for the resource plan are not deleted in the process.

When a job is deleted, associated resource plans are also deleted.

When a deleted job is restored from the recycle bin, associated resource plans will also be restored unless they were directly deleted.

 **Split:** Here you split the selected resource plan in order to assign part of the working time to another user. The **Split resource** window opens.

✓ Enter the workload to assign to the new user in the **ETC new** field.

✓ Enter the new user in the **User name new** field.

The given value is deducted from the old resource plan's **ETC** and transferred to the new resource plan as **ETC. Time budget remaining** is transferred proportionally.

✓ **Release:** Here you overwrite the **ETC** field with the **Employee's ETC** value in every selected resource plan in which the latter has been entered. The **Employee's ETC** and **Explanation** values are deleted in the process.

 **Refresh:** Here you apply changes made to the resource plans while the list was opened.

## Items

This list shows all items in the job.

▪ **Open:** By double-clicking on an entry you open it in its data record window.

 **Refresh:** Here you apply changes made to the items while the list was opened.

## Note

Displaying the completion grade and resource plans requires reading permissions for resource plans. Displaying items requires reading permissions for items.

For users without reading permissions for neither resource plans nor items, the **Resources and items** tab will not be displayed in jobs.

### 5.5.3 The data record window for resource plans

Edit CAS genesisWorld for Devemit Ltd. | 5 Training and service ...  
 File Edit View Insert Search Tools ?  
 Save&Close Print Up Down ?  
 Action Short notes Send Link with New link Report...  
 General Change log Dossier  
 Created by Peter Grayhound; Last changed on 1/9/2020 2:25:20 PM by Peter Grayhound (1, 1.3333333333333333)  
**Subject** CAS genesisWorld for Devemit Ltd. | 5 Training and service  
 User Peter Grayhound Job from 1/2/2020 to 1/16/2020 (10 days 0:00) - Workload: 60 %  
 Total estimate 7 PD 0 hrs 00 min Time budget 8 PD 0 hrs 00 min  
 ETC 3 PD 0 hrs 00 min Time budget remaining 4 PD 0 hrs 00 min  
 Actual 4 PD 0 hrs 00 min Charged 4 PD 0 hrs 00 min  
 % used 50 Status In process  
 Planned working time 8 PD 0 hrs 00 min Deviating working time 1 PD 0 hrs 00 min  
 Employee's ETC 2 PD 0 hrs 00 min ✓ Time stamp  
 Reason Almost finished  
 Parent Devemit Ltd., Walter Ber... CAS genesisWorld for De... 5 Training and service  
 Notes Edit Time stamp

- Subject:** The associated project and job are automatically entered as the subject of the resource plan. The subject cannot be modified.
- User:** Here you specify the user or resource. A user or resource may have at most one resource plan per job.
- Duration of the job and workload in the job:** Alongside the duration of the job the remaining workload of the user in the current resource plan is displayed.  
 Other resource plans of the users are not considered here. To calculate the workload, the **ETC** value is divided by the sum of the user's working hours during the job.
- Total estimate:** This value is calculated by totalling the remaining workload **ETC** and the recorded hours **Actual**.
  - Total estimate = ETC + Actual
- Time budget:** This value denotes the total working time negotiated with the customer.
- ETC:** This value denotes the remaining workload.

- With automatic planning as well as for resource plans without detailed planning, you can directly edit the **ETC** value.

Also, in this case, changing the **Time budget** will adjust the **ETC** value as follows:

$$\text{ETC} = \text{Time budget} - \text{Actual} \mid \text{ETC} \geq 0$$

- The resource plan's **ETC** value are reduced by the **Actual** value of time records for the resource plan that are relevant to accounting (see "**Relevance to accounting**" on page 58). With manual detailed planning, the maximum that will be subtracted per time record is the value planned for the associated interval (week or month).
- With automatic planning, you can also edit the **ETC** value in the tree view (see "5.5.4 Resource planning in the tree view" on page 64).
- **Time budget remaining:** This value is calculated by deducting the recorded order value **Charged** from the time budget.
  - Time budget remaining = Time budget - Charged
- **Actual and Charged:** These values hold the total worked hours called **Actual** and the total billable order value called **Charged** in time records for the resource plan.
  - Only time records relevant to accounting with primary links to the resource plan's primary job will be considered (see "**Relevance to accounting**" on page 58).
  - Time records for sub-jobs of the resource plan's primary job are not considered.
- **% used:** This value is calculated as the proportion of working time already recorded (**Actual**) of the time budget.
  - % used = Actual / Time budget (or 0 if time budget = 0)
- **Status:** Resource plans are created with the status of their associated job. Changing the job's status will also change the status of all associated resource plans.
 

You may assign a different status to each resource plan. All status options for the type of the associated job are available for selection.
- **Planned working time:** Originally planned working time.
 

When creating a resource plan, the **ETC** value is automatically entered in this field, adding any **Actual** hours already recorded for the resource plan's user and job.
- **Deviating working time:** Originally **Planned working time** minus the current **Total estimate**. Any difference is the result of time records exceeding the value planned for a week or month as well as additionally cleared **ETC**.
- **Estimate and explanation:** A user included as a resource can enter an ETC estimate differing from the **ETC** value as well as an explanation for the difference in the data record window for time records. If this feature is enabled, the **Employee's ETC** and **Explanation** fields are displayed for **resource** plans. The **Employee's ETC** field is empty if no estimate has been given.

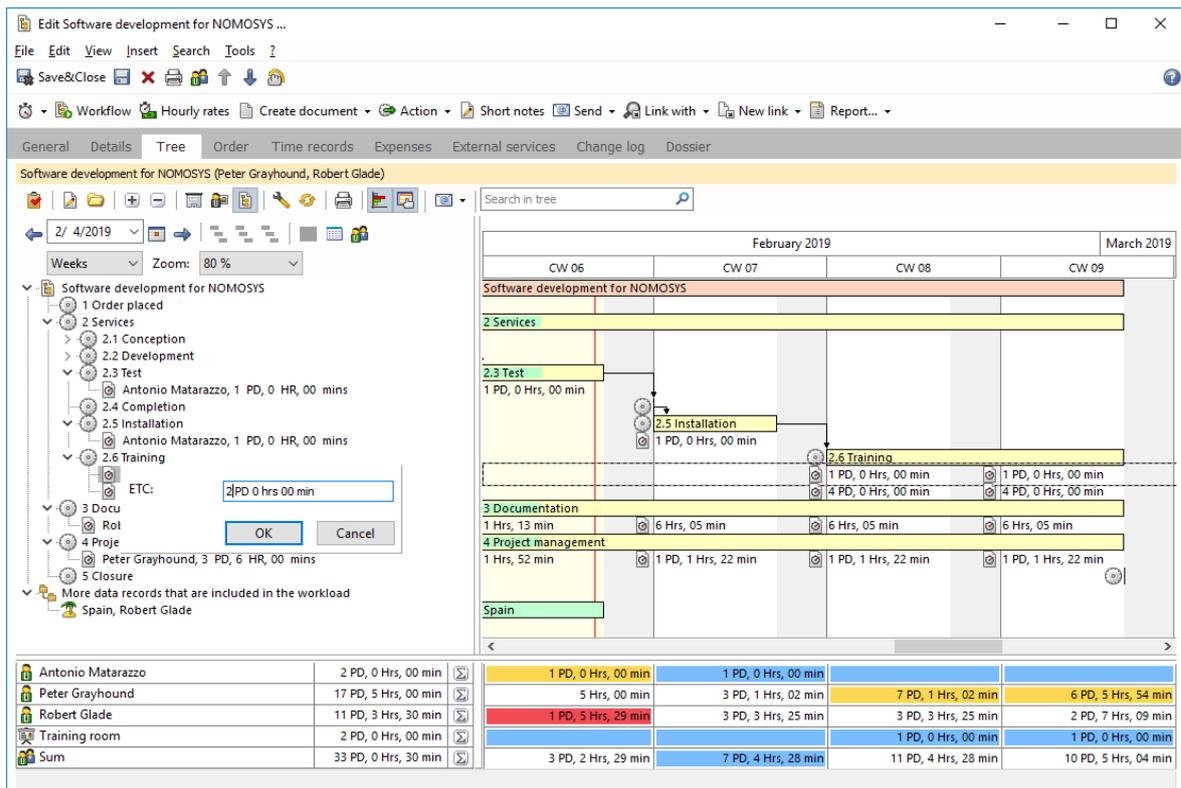
- ✓ **Adopt employee's ETC:** Here you transfer the **Employee's ETC** value to the **ETC** field. The contents of the **Employee's ETC** and **Explanation** fields are deleted.
- **Parent:** Here you can see and alter the primary links of the resource plan as in other data records. A resource plan must have a primary link to a job in order to save it.
- **Notes:** Here you enter notes for the resource plan.

## 5.5.4 Resource planning in the tree view

In addition to the Gantt chart, you can display a planning view.

### Note

This feature isn't available with manual resource planning.



**Display resource planning:** Here you display or hide the resource planning view. In this mode, additional features are available in the toolbar of the Gantt view.

**Show or hide activity list:** Here you display or hide the list of activities and resource plans by clicking in a cell of the working time overview below the Gantt chart, the associated data records are displayed in the list.

**Select participants:** When you activate the resource planning view, the participants of any displayed resource plans will be selected automatically. Here you add users

and resources in order to budget them in resource plans. The **Select team** option is also available in the context menu for the user area to the lower left.

- **Working time in the Gantt chart:** For each resource plan, the Gantt chart displays the workload per period, e.g., per month. In resource plans for jobs spanning multiple months, the hours are distributed to the individual months proportionally.
- **Total workload:** Below the tree view, you can see the total workload or disposability of the displayed users and resources in the view's timeframe.

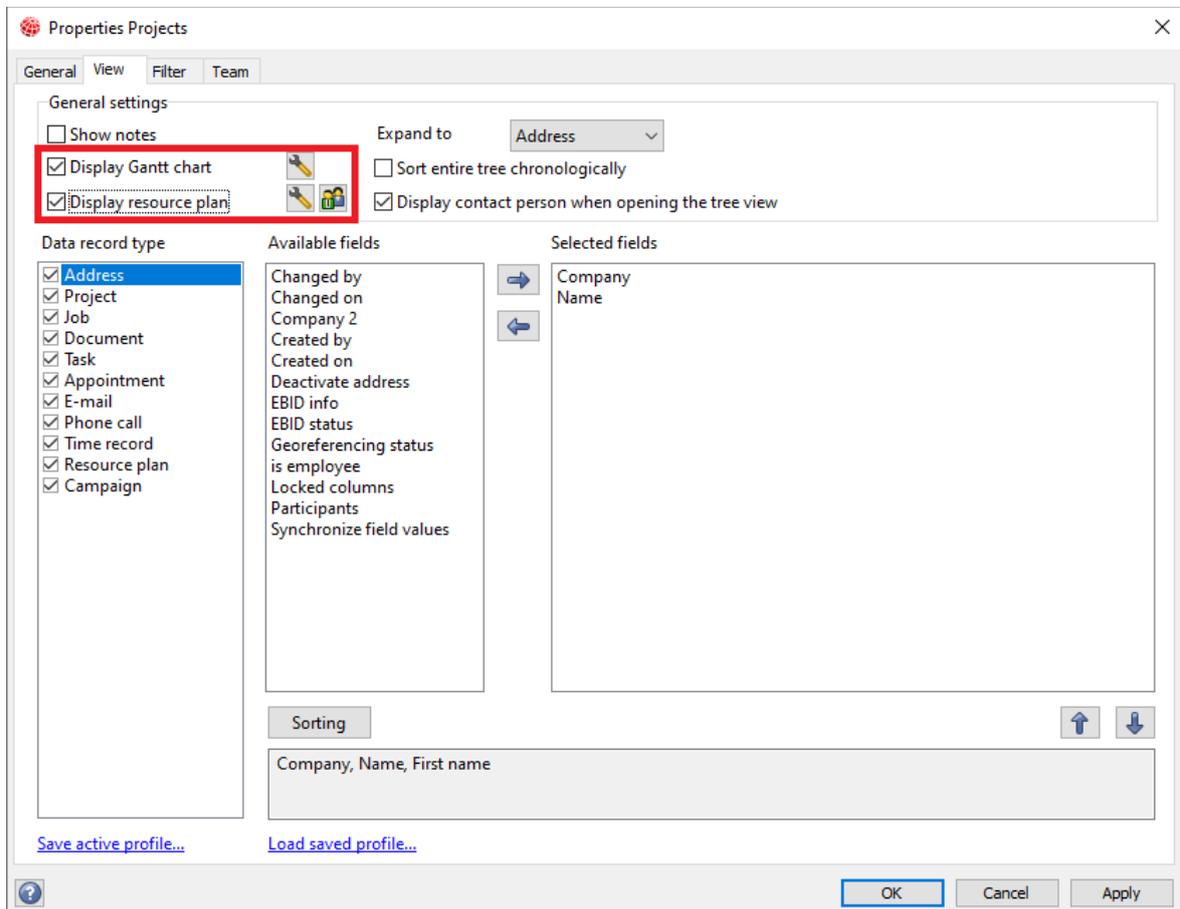
In the tree view's settings, you configure the calculation and display of the workload (see "5.5.5 Settings for resource planning in the tree view" on page 66).

Any activities in the view's timeframe that you have selected in the settings are considered, even if they are not displayed in the tree view.

- **Modify ETC:** Click a resource plan selected in the tree view to modify its ETC.
  - ✓ Click on the desired tree view entry to select it.
  - ✓ Click on the entry again to modify the **ETC**.
  - ✓ Enter the desired value and confirm by clicking **OK**.
- **Budget a resource for a job:** You may budget a user or resource for a job in a resource plan via drag-and-drop.
  - ✓ Click on the user name in the user list on the lower left and hold the mouse button.
  - ✓ Holding the mouse button, drag the user to the target job, then
  - ✓ Release the mouse button.
  - ✓ You are prompted to enter the **Time budget**.
  - ✓ After confirmation, the **Time budget** will also be entered as the resource plan's **ETC**. The resource plan is added to the job.
- **Divide hours:** You may delegate all or some of the budgeted hours by dragging and dropping a user on a resource plan in the tree view.
  - ✓ Click a user name in the user list on the lower left and hold the mouse button.
  - ✓ Holding the mouse button, drag the user to the resource plan to be delegated.
  - ✓ Release the mouse button.
  - ✓ You are prompted to enter the workload to delegate to the user as **ETC**. **Time budget remaining** is transferred proportionally.
  - ✓ After confirmation, the new resource plan is created. The **Time budget** and **ETC** values in the old resource plan are adjusted. If no **ETC** hours remain and no **Actual** hours have been entered for the previous user, that user will be replaced by the new user instead of creating a new resource plan.

### 5.5.5 Settings for resource planning in the tree view

In the tree view's **View** settings, select **Display Gantt chart** and **Display resource planning** to activate resource planning when the view opens:



### Notes

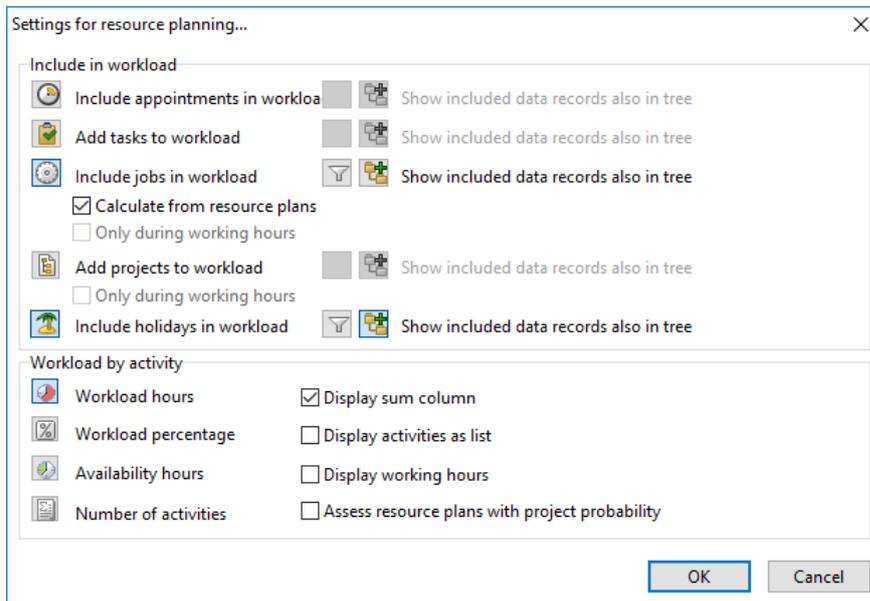
This feature isn't available with manual resource planning.

Make sure the **Resource plan** item is selected under **Data record type** in addition to the general options for the Gantt chart and resource planning.

The workload calculation (see following page) only includes data records for which the logged on user has read rights. Additionally, read rights for the **Start** and **End** fields of the data records are required.

Use the two buttons next to the **Display resource planning** option to control the following resource planning settings:

 Here you open the **Settings for resource planning** window.



- **Include in workload:** Here you specify whether appointments, tasks, jobs, projects, and holiday entries are considered in the calculated workload.
  - ▾ **Set filter:** You can enter filter conditions for any selected activity type in order to limit the considered activities.
    - **Calculate from resource plans:** Select this option to consider only the ETC values of resource plans associated with jobs in the workload instead of the jobs' duration. This option is active by default.
    - **Only during working hours:** With this option, only the portions of each activity's duration that overlap with the users' working hours are considered as workload.
    - 📁 **Show included data records also in tree:** Here you display data records which are included in the workload calculation but are not part of the tree structure at the bottom of the tree view and the Gantt chart.
- **Workload by activity:** Here you configure the workload display.
  - **Display total column:** The total column displays the workload by activity per user and for the entire timeframe of the view.
  - **Display activities as list:** Here you specify whether the list of activities and resource plans should be displayed when the view opens.
  - **Display working hours:** Select this option to display the working hours entered for the displayed users in the **Workload in hours** mode.
- 📁 **Select users:** When you activate the resource planning view, the participants of any displayed resource plans will be selected automatically. Here you add users and resources in order to budget them in resource plans. This option is also available in the toolbar for the Gantt view and in the context menu for the user area to the lower left.

## 5.5.6 Resource planning for multiple projects

You can create tree views in your navigator to plan resources for multiple projects.

### Note

This feature isn't available with manual resource planning.

The screenshot shows the CAS genesisWorld (PM01) - Peter Grayhound - EXAMPLE interface. The left sidebar contains navigation options such as Dashboard, Project management & helpdesk (public), Address management, Project management, and Resource planning. The main area displays a resource plan for February 2019 (CW 07, CW 08, CW 09) and March 2019. The tree view on the left shows a hierarchy of projects and resources, including Devevit Ltd., NOMOSYS, and Spain. The resource plan grid shows resource allocation for various tasks across weeks, with a summary table at the bottom.

Resource	2/10/2019	2/17/2019	2/24/2019
Antonio Matarazzo	1 PD, 0 Hrs, 00 min		
Michael Green	5 PD, 0 Hrs, 00 min		
Peter Grayhound	17 PD, 5 Hrs, 00 min		
Robert Glade	15 PD, 3 Hrs, 30 min		
Training room	2 PD, 0 Hrs, 00 min		
<b>Sum</b>	<b>41 PD, 0 Hrs, 30 min</b>		

The features and settings available for such views are the same as for planning resources for an individual project (see "5.5.4 Resource planning in the tree view" on page 64 and "5.5.5 Settings for resource planning in the tree view" on page 66).

The following section shows how you create a resource plan tree view. This view displays all projects and jobs with open resource plans.

If you wish to plan resources for projects and jobs that don't have associated resource plans yet, create a project or job tree view instead and display resource plans in the view. In this case, enter filter settings to make sure the view displays only projects and jobs that are relevant for resource planning.

## Creating a resource plan tree view

Proceed as follows to add a resource plan tree view to your program navigator.

- ✓ Right-click on the desired place to call up the context menu.
- ✓ Select **Create new view**. The view wizard opens.
- ✓ Select **Tree view**. Then click **Next**.
- ✓ Select **Resource planning**. Then click **Next**.
- ✓ Enter the desired name for the view. Then click **Next**.
- ✓ At the bottom left, select at least the following data record types.
  - Addresses
  - Projects
  - Jobs
  - Resource plans
- ✓ At the top left, select **Display Gantt chart** and enter associated **Settings** (see "**Settings for Gantt view**" on page 46).
 

At the top left, select **Display resource plan**, enter associated **Settings** and select **Users** (see "5.5.5 Settings for resource planning in the tree view" on page 66).
- ✓ At the top right, under **Expand to**, select the **Completed** option to directly display all resource plans when the view opens.
  - In the default settings, the tree view will initially only display addresses that have resource plans. To display the actual resource plans, you must first expand the associated addresses, projects and jobs.
- ✓ Click **Next**.
- ✓ Enter the filter condition **Status – not equal – Completed**.
  - This will only display open resource plans, regardless of whether ETC remains or the associated job is in the past.
  - With the **Adopt to current periode** button in the toolbar for the Gantt view, you can extend selected projects and jobs, such that time may once more recorded for associated resource plans (see page 45).
  - Alternatively, you can create jobs and resource plans to set the ETC to zero.
- ✓ Click **Finish** to create the view.

### 5.5.7 Completion grade in the Gantt chart

You assign completion grades to jobs from 0 to 100 percent in steps of 25 percent. In the job, you can see and modify the completion grade in the **Resources and items** tab.

In the Gantt chart, the completion grade is displayed as a green filling bar in the job. You alter the completion grade using your mouse in the following way.

- ✓ Move the mouse pointer over the right border of the green filling bar until it switches to  **Completion grade** mode. In jobs without a green filling bar, move the mouse pointer over the inner left border of the job.
- ✓ Press the mouse button and hold it until the **Completion grade** overlay box appears.
- ✓ Holding the mouse button, alter the completion grade by moving the mouse pointer left or right.
- ✓ Release the mouse button in order to enter the selected **Completion grade** in the job.
- **Completing a job:** Set the completion grade to 100% or assign the job a completion status in the tree view to complete it.

The selected completion status (or if the completion grade was set to 100%, the first available completion status) will be set. All associated resource plans will receive the same status. You will be asked whether remaining **ETC** should be deleted.

With the **Externally bill remaining time budget when a job is completed** setting, the **Time budget remaining** will be added added to the **Charged** value in the last time record relevant to accounting for each resource plan for which time has already been recorded (see "**Completion grade and completion of jobs**" on page 58).

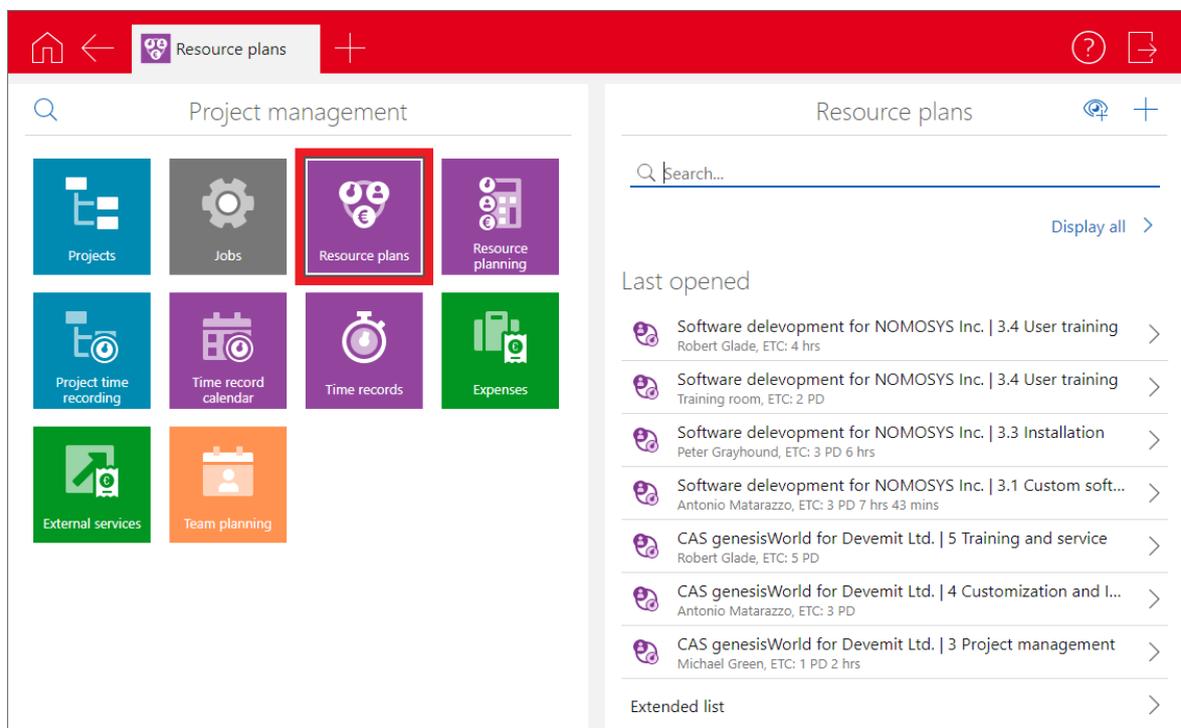
## 5.6 Resource planning in the Web Client

In the Web Client, resource planning apps are available under **Project management**.

- 5.6.1 Resource plans (page 71)
- 5.6.2 Resource planning (page 72)

### 5.6.1 Resource plans

With the **Resource plans** app in the **Project management** app group, you can see and edit existing resource plans as well as create new ones.

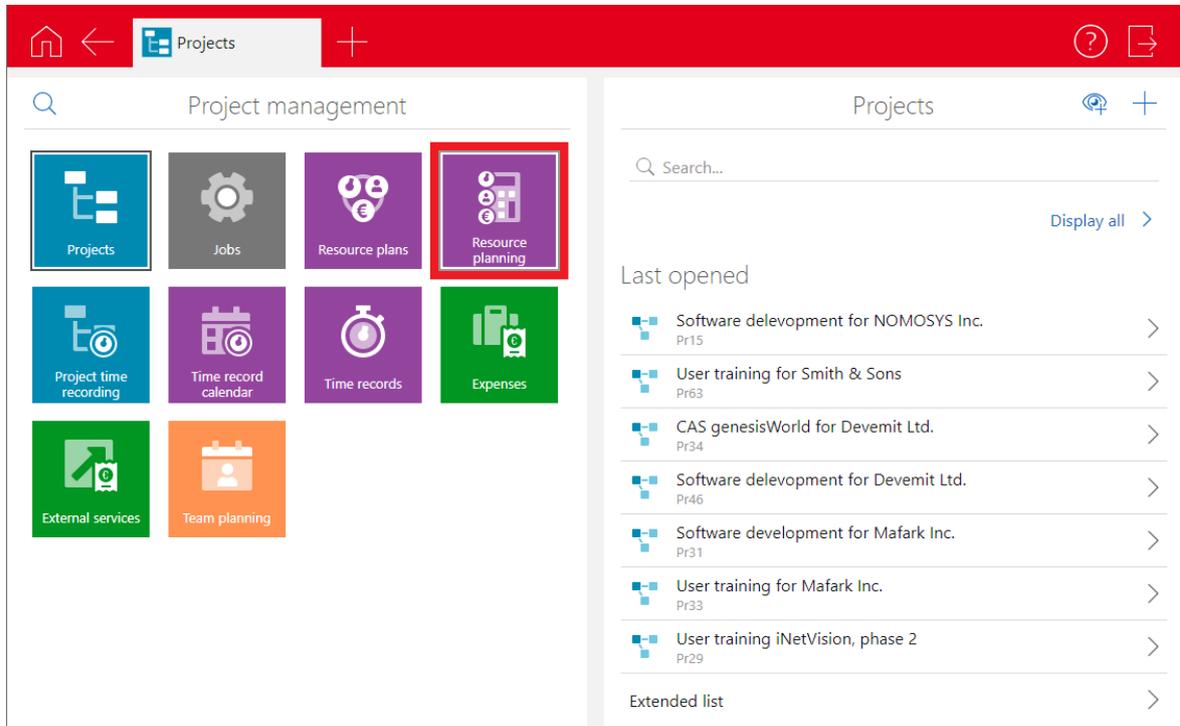


- In the **Resource plans** app start, you have access to your resource plans and associated views.
- Click on the eye icon to create a new list view for resource plans.
- Click on a resource plan to open the detail view. You can also edit or delete the resource plan here.
- Click on the plus icon [+] to create a new resource plan.
- You can also create resource plans directly for jobs. To do this, in the job's detail view, open the action menu with the three dots [...] and select **Create > Resource plan**.  
Resource plans assigned to a job will be displayed in the job's detail view.

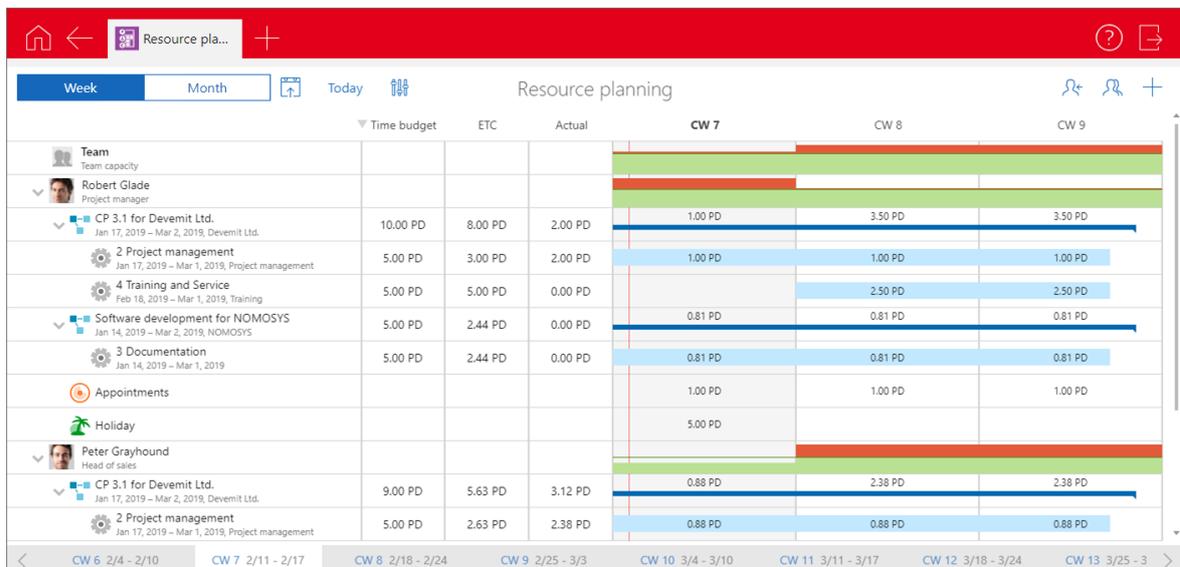
Click on the question mark at the top right to open the online help pages for more details.

## 5.6.2 Resource planning

The **Resource planning** app in the **Project management** group displays planned workloads and holidays in the selected time period per employee, project and job.



Open the app by clicking on the associated tile.



Please note that creating and editing resource plans requires edit rights for this data record type and the **ETC** field.

### Displayed data records

The displayed workloads and charts include:

- Open resource plans (with manual planning: including past open ETC values)
- Appointments starting on or after the current day (including appointments for the current day that are already over) ,for which **Nominal costs** has been selected
- Vacation days starting on and including the current day from holiday entries

The app displays your own resource plans by default. Alternatively, you can open the view via **Display planning** in the radial menu for a project, job or employee. The view will then adopt the associated user or participants of the selected job or project.

You may select different employees via the user selection at the top right.

## View mode and start date

Click on the **Week** or **Month** buttons to switch view modes.

Click on the calendar sheet button to select a start date in the calendar sheet view.

Click on the **Today** button to switch to the current date.

Select a week or month in the timeline below the view to switch to an earlier or later week or month (depending on your view mode).

## Number of periods and displayed columns

Click on the slider icon to open the view's settings and configure the number of periods and the resource plan fields for workload key figures to display as columns:

- **Total estimate:** Current planning of recorded working time **Actual** plus **ETC**.
- **Actual:** Recorded working time.
- **ETC:** Currently planned ETC For manual planning, the sum of working time per period.
- **Employee's ETC:** Where appropriate, this is the deviating estimate for **ETC**, estimated by the respective employee.
- **Time budget remaining:** **Time budget** minus any accountable **Value**.
- **Value:** Externally accountable recorded working time.
- **Time budget:** Customer's authorized working time
- **Deviating working time:** Originally **Planned working time** minus the current **Total estimate**. Differences are due to time records exceeding values planned for the associated week or month or additionally cleared workload (**ETC**).
- **Planned working time:** Originally planned working time.

## Creating new plans and editing the planning

Right-click on a project or job in the tree view to open the radial menu, where you can ...

- ... assign new workloads (**Create new plan**)...
- ... and distribute existing workloads (**Split efforts**). For this action, you specify the portion of the workload (**ETC**) to distribute and the **User** to distribute it to.

The other planning values of the resource plan are split in the same proportion.

Left-click on a job in the tree view to open the **Edit planning** window:

- Here you can edit the job's **Subject**, **Start** and **End** as well as the resource plan's **Time budget**, **ETC** and **User** (if there are no associated time records yet).
- You can also reset here the manual planning entered for the resource plan.

## Gantt chart

In the Gantt chart you can see:

- Duration of projects and jobs
- Resource plan hours for projects and jobs, appointment hours and holiday hours per week or month

You can't change the duration of projects and jobs in the Gantt chart.

You can directly edit workloads per week or month with manual distribution (see below).

## Automatic workload distribution

Workloads are initially distributed evenly over the weeks during the associated job's remaining duration with regard to employees' working hours and public holidays.

Remaining **ETC** of a job which is completely in the past will be displayed in the last associated week or month, depending on your view mode.

## Manual workload distribution

With manual resource planning, you can enter person days per week or month:

### Note

This feature is optional in version x11 and requires the database update for version x11.1.7. If your database has been created with a version less recent than x11.1.7, you must also activate the manual distribution in the Management Console (see „10.5 New features and fields in Project x11.1.7“ on page 223 for details).

- Click in a field to enter planned workloads.

- Confirm by hitting [Return] or by clicking on the check mark icon. This will select the next period or resource plan.
- Cancel by hitting [Esc] or by clicking on the cross icon.
- In the **Month** view, workloads you have entered per week are added up and displayed per month.

When overwriting week values combined this way in the **Month** view, the associated weekly values will be replaced by the new monthly hours.

- In the **Week** view, workloads you have entered per month are distributed equally over the weeks in each month with regard to working hours and public holidays.

For the current month, this distribution starts in the current week.

When overwriting distributed values in the **Week** view, the associated monthly values will be replaced by the new weekly hours.

Remaining workload entered for a past month will be associated with and displayed for the last week of that month.

- You can enter workloads outside the original job duration.

This will extend the job as well as set zero workloads for any weeks or months between the job's original and the new start or end date.

When decreasing a job's duration, workloads entered outside the new duration won't be deleted automatically. You can manually delete such workloads by overwriting them with zeroes.

- All entered workloads are saved relatively to the job's start date. Therefore, postponing a job by shifting its start date will also shift associated workloads.

Please note that this may spread workloads entered for one week over two, if, for example, you shift a job's start date from Monday to Wednesday.

Likewise, workloads entered for one month may be spread over two months, if, for example, you shift the job's start from the first to the fifteenth of a month.

- If you have entered workloads manually, the **ETC** field of the resource plan displays the sum of these workloads and can no longer be edited directly.
- Click on a job in the **Resource planning** view to open the **Edit planning** window.

Here, you can delete the manual planning for the associated resource plan.

To do this, click on the **Reset the manual distribution** button next to the **ETC** field.

You can then once more edit the **ETC** field directly. The entered value will be evenly distributed over the job's remaining duration again with regard to working hours and public holidays.

## Time records and overbooking

Time records that are relevant for accounting and are entered for a job with a resource plan reduce the planned value in the associated week.

With automatic or monthly planning, time records exceeding the planned value assigned to a week via automatic distribution reduce the resource plan's **ETC** value (for automatic planning) or the remainder entered for the associated month (for monthly planning).

In this case, the difference will successively be deducted from the remaining weeks starting with the last week of the month (for monthly planning) or the job duration (for automatic planning), and going backwards.

**Example:** a job spans three weeks, starting with the current one. A total **ETC** value of 3 pd results in 1 pd per week. If 2.5 pd worth of time records are now entered in the first week, this results in a difference of 1.5 pd. This difference is first deducted from the last week ( $1 \text{ pd} - 1.5 \text{ pd} = 0 \text{ pd}$ , remainder 0.5 pd). The remainder of 0.5 pd is deducted from the second week. The resulting **ETC** spread over three weeks is 0 pd, 0.5 pd, 0 pd.

The maximum amount of time subtracted from the total **ETC** is the amount of time planned for the associated week (with weekly planning), month (with monthly planning) or the total **ETC** (with automatic planning).

## Workload charts

The right hand side colored charts in the rows displayed for users and the **Team** at the top show the availability, global utilization, remaining availability and overload of displayed employees according to resource plans, appointments and holidays displayed in the view.

- For each employee, a separate chart of their availability and utilization is displayed.
- The **Team** row displays the availability and utilization of all displayed employees. These values are summed up over the values displayed for the individual employees.
- The availability is displayed as a horizontal green line corresponding to the working hours in every period. Public holidays lower the availability.
- Workload within availability is displayed as a green column below the availability line.

Overload is displayed as a red column above the availability line.

Workloads include only hours displayed in the Gantt chart for resource plans, appointments and holidays.

- Click on a chart segment to display the availability and utilization in the associated period in numbers.

## Online help

Click on the question mark at the top right to open the online help pages for more details.

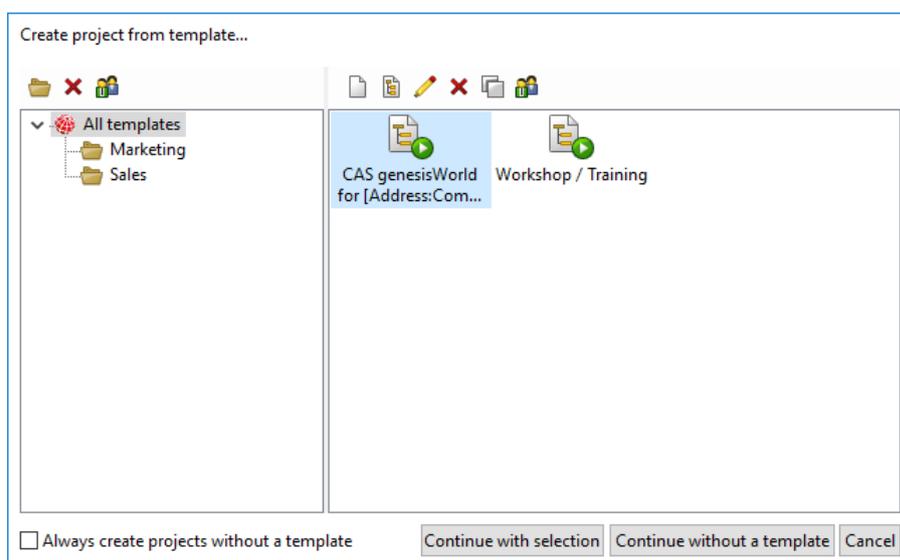
## 6 Using project and job templates

The following sections describe the features for project and job templates:

- 6.1 Using project templates (page 77)
- 6.2 Editing a template (page 79)
- 6.3 Editing a project in the data record window (page 85)
- 6.4 Adding or continuing a workflow (page 86)
- 6.5 Using job templates (page 86)

### 6.1 Using project templates

When you create a project, the selection of project templates opens first.



Under **All templates**, you can see all templates to which you have access. Select a folder in order to only display the templates it contains.

- **Continue with selection:** Here you create a project from the selected template.
- **Continue without a template:** Here you create a project without a template. You can add a template later (see "6.4 Adding or continuing a workflow" on page 86).
  - **Always create projects without a template:** Select this option to disable template selection. You can reactivate in your settings (**General > Deactivated messages**).
- **Cancel:** Here you close the template selection without creating a project.

In the **User Management** area of the Management Console, you can assign permissions for reading, inserting, changing and deleting of project and job templates.

## 6.1.1 Creating and editing templates

For creating and editing templates, the following features are available here.

-  **Create new template:** Here you create a new template in the template editor.
-  **Import project as a template:** Here you open a list for selecting the project to import. The selected project is loaded into the template editor with its tree structure.
-  **Edit template:** Here you open the selected template in the template editor. When you click **OK** in the template editor, changes are saved and you get back to the template selection.
-  **Delete template:** Here you delete the selected template. The **Continue workflow** feature will then no longer be available for associated projects (see "6.4 Adding or continuing a workflow" on page 86).
-  **Duplicate template:** Here you create a copy of the selected template.
-  **Change access rights for template:** New templates are initially owned by the user who created them. Here you open the **Select team** window in order to set access permissions to the template. The **Standard** permission is used.

## 6.1.2 Organizing templates in folders

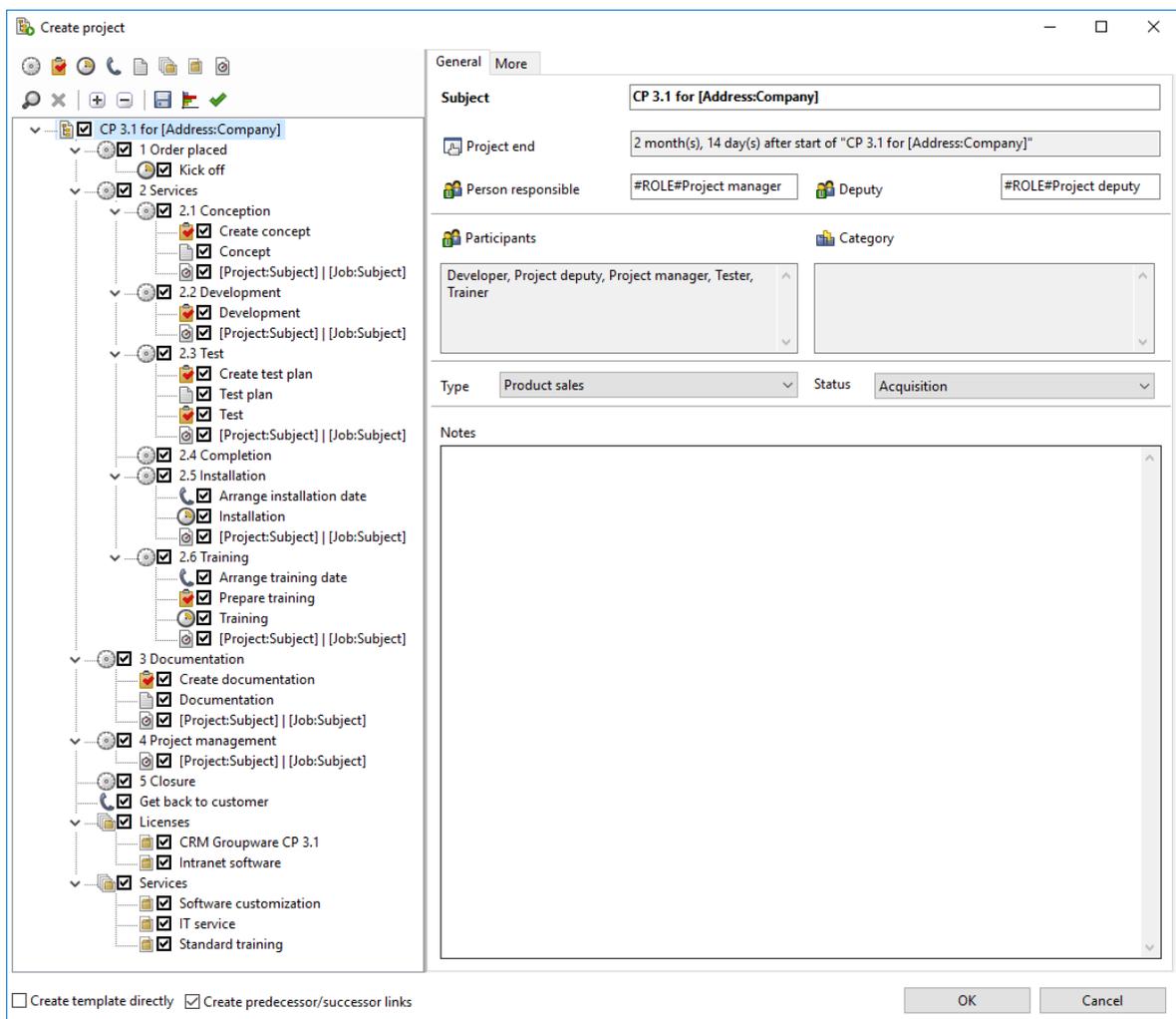
For organizing your templates in folders, the following features are available here.

-  **Create folder:** Here you create a new folder.
- **Move template to folder:** Hold mouse button while dragging a template to a folder.
- **Detach template from folder:** To detach a template from a folder, open the containing folder and hold the mouse button while dragging the template to the **All templates** entry.
- **Rename folder:** To rename a folder, select it and click it again.
-  **Delete folder:** Here you delete the selected folder as well as any contained folders, project and job templates. Please note that the same folders are used for project and job templates, so it's possible to delete templates not visible in the current view.
-  **Change access rights for template:** New folders are initially public. Here you open the **Select team** window in order to set access permissions to the folder and all subfolders. This permission only entitles users to see the folder structure. Separate permissions are distributed for the contained templates.

## 6.2 Editing a template

In the template editor, you create and edit project and job templates.

The template editor opens when you create a new project or job from any template in which the **Create template directly** option is not selected.



- **Create template directly:** Select this if projects created from this template should open the template editor first.
- **Create predecessor/successor links:** Select this to create time relations between jobs as predecessor/successor links (see "5.2.3 Predecessor and successor" on page 47).
- **OK:** Create the project from the template (**Create project** window), confirm creating additionally selected project steps (**Continue workflow** window) or save changes in the template and get back to the template selection (**Edit template** window).
- **Cancel:** Cancel creating or extending the project or editing the template without committing your changes.

## 6.2.1 Editing a project in the tree view

The following features are available in the tree view and the associated toolbar.

- **Insert data record:** Click on the symbol of a data record type to create a new data record of this type for the selected data record.

 **Jobs** are created in the project or in another job.

 **Tasks** are created in the project or in a job.

 **Appointments** are created in the project or in a job.

### Note

Creating appointments via project and job templates isn't supported when you are using the Exchange sync module.

 **Phone calls** are created in the project or in a job.

 **Documents** are created in the project or in a job from templates. Select a template and click **OK**. Click **Edit template** in the data record editor to the right in order to open the document template in the associated data record window.

 **Item groups** are created in the project or in a job. Sub-groups for items are not supported in project and job templates.

 **Items** are created in the project, in a job or in an item group.

 **Resource plans** are created in a job. Click on the User button in the data record editor to the right in order to enter a user, a resource or a role (see "**Using roles as placeholders**" on page 82).

- ☐ **Exclude data records from creation:** In the box next to each data record, you control whether the data record will be created along with the project or job.
  - **Continue workflow:** Data records that were excluded from creation at first can later be added by clicking on the **Workflow** button in the toolbar of the data record window for projects (see "6.4 Adding or continuing a workflow" on page 86).
  - **Automatic creation:** In the **Automatic creation** tab to the right of the template editor, you select status options whose assignment to the project causes the data record selected to the left to be created automatically (see "Automatic creation by status" on page 84).
- **Modifying links and order of data records:** Via drag-and-drop, you can change a data record's association or the data records' order. To do this, click on the entry to move and, while holding the mouse button, drag it to the desired place.
  - **Change association:** Drag a data record on the project or on another job to change the association.

- **Change order:** Drag a task, an appointment, a phone call or a document to another data record of one of these four data record types to insert the moved data record after the other one.
- **Association and order of jobs:** If you move one job onto another, a menu opens. Here you select whether the moved job should be inserted before, after or in the target job as its sub-job.

 **Adopt items:** Here you transfer items from a project into a project template. Select the project in the **Search** window. Transfer the positions by clicking **Accept & Close**.

 **Deleting data records from the template:** You delete the selected data record from the template by clicking on the **Delete** button in the toolbar, by pressing the [Del] key or via the context menu. Before deletion you are asked to confirm. As all changes the deletion is only applied when the template is saved.

 **Open tree:** Here you expand all branches.

 **Close tree:** Here you close all branches.

 **Save changes in the template:** When creating or editing a template, clicking **OK** saves the template. When creating a project or job from a template, changes are not saved automatically. In this case, click **Save changes in the template** to save the changes.

 **Display/hide Gantt chart:** Here you display a Gantt chart instead of the data record editor in the right half of the window. The current date is displayed as project start as if the project had just been created. All other data records are displayed according to the time relations entered for them (see "**Entering time relations**" on page 82).

It is not possible to adjust the time relations in the Gantt chart.

 **Check time relations:** Here you check the consistency of entered time relations (see "**Entering time relations**" on page 82.) Any inconsistencies will be displayed.

## 6.2.2 Editing data records in the data record editor

In the default setting, the data record editor is displayed to the right. Via the **General** and **More** tabs you access any preallocatable fields.

### Note

Input helps of the **Selection tree** type are not fully supported in the **Category** field. If such an input help has been entered for this field, only top level items will be available for selection.

The following sections describe special features of the data record editor.

- **Transfer participants:** This is available for jobs, tasks, appointments, documents and phone calls. Here you assign to the selected data record the participants and resources as well as the **Maximum external access right** of its parent data record.
- **Using roles as placeholders:** By clicking on the **Participants** button you open the selection of participants. In addition to users and resources, roles are available here. These are replaced by users and resources when the project is created. Via the list to the left you create roles, delete or rename existing roles. Via the **Rights** button you limit data record access for the user assigned in a role. The **External access** menu is synchronous with the **Maximum external access right** menu and serves for limiting external access rights of other users to data records of the future participant.
- **Entering time relations:** When a project is created from a template, the current point of time is inserted as the project start. The project end results from the duration which you specify in the template. The project start and end may be modified in the project's data record window when it is created.

When you save the project, all other data records will be created. You either specify associated dates as fixed dates to be entered when the project is created from the template or as time relations depending on the project start or end.

- **Specifying the project duration:** Click on the **Project end** button to open the **Enter time relation** window.

Enter time relation

Query date when creating new records

Default value: Wednesday, 12/December 2018

Enter a date in relation to a fixed time (days, months and years)

days  Ignore weekends and holidays

months  years

After  Current date

Start of CAS genesisWorld for [Adresse]

OK Cancel

Select **Query date when creating new records** if users should be prompted to enter the project end whenever a project is created from the template. Under **Default value**, you may also enter a default value for the project end.

Select **Enter a date in relation to a fixed time (days, months and years)** in order to enter the project's duration instead of the project end. The **Ignore weekends and holidays** option only affects the **days** specified. The options for other points of reference are disabled when entering the project end as you can only refer to the project start here.

- **Specifying the start and end of other data records:** Select a data record in the tree view. Then click on the button with the date you wish to specify in the data record editor. The **Enter time relation** window opens.

Select **Query date when creating new records** if users should be prompted to enter the date whenever a project is created from the template. Under **Default value**, you may also enter a default value for the date.

Select **Enter a date in relation to a fixed time (days, months and years)** in order to enter the date in relation to a point of reference. Like when entering the project end, the **Ignore weekends and holidays** option only affects the **days** specified.

Then select the desired point of reference.

With the **Current date** option, you may refer to the respective date of creation for data records you exclude from creation at first in order to add them later via **Automatic creation by status** or **Continue workflow**.

Moreover, the beginning and end of the project as well as the beginning and end of any other associated data records are available for selection unless a time relation referring to the current record has already been entered for them. When you enter the end date, you may also refer to the beginning of the data record itself like when entering the project end.

- **Set time:** For jobs, tasks, appointments and phone calls, you set the reminder time in relation to the data record's start or end.
- **Variables for address fields, project subject and roles:** The following sections describe the inclusion of placeholders in data record fields.

- **References to fields:** You may refer to any fields of all parent data records in the **Subject** and **Notes** fields. References will be replaced when the record is created if the required links are present (e.g., the project has a primary address).

The references must be of the form `[Data record:Field]`.

For example, `[Address:Company]` will be replaced by the company name of the primary address.

- **Roles in text fields:** Roles created in the team selection may be embedded in text fields (e.g., to enter the selected project manager in the **Person responsible** field).

The references must be of the form `#Role#Name`.

For example, `#Role#Project manager` will be replaced by the user selected for the **Project manager** role.

- **Automatic creation by status:** Data records initially excluded from creation may be created automatically when the project is saved with a status for which this is intended. If roles are included, the user is asked to select participants and resources.

If you have assigned a type to the project in the data record editor, the associated status options are available for selection for other data records in the **Automatic creation** tab. Here you select the status options whose selection in the project should cause the selected data record to be created automatically.

- **Create with all subordinate data records:** Select this option if the automatic creation of a job should include the creation of its subordinate data records.

### 6.3 Editing a project in the data record window

After selecting a template and specifying any additional information that may be required, the project opens in its data record window.

- ✓ **Adjust start and end:** The current date is automatically entered as start. The end is defined by the duration entered in the template and may only be modified after saving. If you modify the start prior to saving, the end is shifted accordingly.
- ✓ **Save project:** If desired, make further entries for the project. Save it in a final step by clicking **Save** or **Save&Close**.

Any other data records in the template that were not excluded are now created.

## 6.4 Adding or continuing a workflow

Using the **Workflow** button in the toolbar of the related data record window, you extend a project in the template editor. To do this, the project template that was used must still exist. For projects not created from a template or whose template was deleted in the meantime, the template selection opens first.

The template editor opens in the **Continue workflow** mode in any case.

- Data records that were already created can no longer be modified here.
  - All data records that have not yet been created or that have meanwhile been deleted are available for creation.
  - Data records under a job cannot be created without the associated job. The same holds true for items in item groups.
  - All features of the template editor are fully accessible in this view. However, changes made to the template cannot be saved.
- ✓ Select the data records to create by clicking in the boxes next to them.
- ✓ Confirm the project's extension by clicking **OK**.

If you have selected data records for creation to which roles have been assigned, you are now asked to select the intended participants and resources.

## 6.5 Using job templates

For job templates, the same features are available as for project templates.

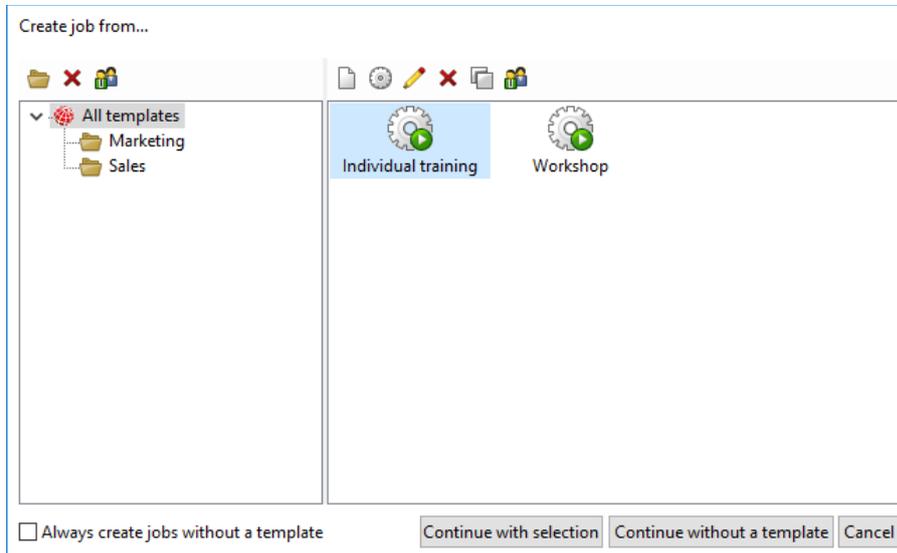
### 6.5.1 Project and job templates

The following segments briefly describe the interaction, differences and similarities of project and job templates.

- **Job templates in projects:** You may use job templates in different projects regardless of the use of project templates. When a process changes, you only need to adjust one job template instead of several project templates.
- **Job templates without projects:** Jobs from templates may also be used without an associated project.
- **Turning off the template selection:** The template selection for jobs may be turned off independently from the template selection for projects.
- **Continue workflow:** In the toolbar of the data record window for jobs, the **Workflow** button is available as it is for projects. Click this to extend a job created from a template or to add a template to a job which was initially created without using a template.

## 6.5.2 Specifics when using job templates

The following specifics apply to job templates.



- **Template folders for projects and jobs:** The same folders are used for project and job templates. Deleting a folder will also delete any project and job templates it contains. Please note that you may delete templates not currently visible this way.
- **Job is point of reference for all time relations:** When you enter time relations, the topmost job is the point of reference for any other data records. You therefore start by entering the job's duration. All other data records relate to the job or to other data records associated to the job.

## 7 Recording and analyzing project costs

---

This chapter describes the features for time records, expenses and external services as well as the associated reports for addresses, projects and jobs.

Most of these features are available in both the Desktop Client and in the Web Client.

Please note that you may access the billing features in the Desktop Client only.

- 7.1 Time records in the Desktop Client (page 88)
- 7.2 Time records in the Web Client (page 106)
- 7.3 Expenses in the Desktop Client (page 112)
- 7.4 Expenses in the Web Client (page 123)
- 7.5 External services in the Desktop Client (page 124)
- 7.6 External services in the Web Client (page 129)
- 7.7 Reports for addresses, projects and jobs (page 130)
- 7.8 Billing in reports (Desktop Client only) (page 143)

### 7.1 Time records in the Desktop Client

The following sections describe the features for time records in the Desktop Client:

- 7.1.1 Views and features for time records (page 89)
- 7.1.2 Creating time records (page 89)
- 7.1.3 The data record window for time records (page 90)
- 7.1.4 Time record calendar (page 96)
- 7.1.5 Billing time records (page 101)
- 7.1.6 Defining hourly rates for addresses and projects (page 103)
- 7.1.7 Time record details in projects and jobs (page 104)
- 7.1.8 User settings for time records (page 104)

### 7.1.1 Views and features for time records

The following standard features are available for time records in the Desktop Client.

- **Data record window** with **General**, **Tree**, **Change log** and **Dossier** tabs
  - **Type** for unambiguous labelling
  - **Status** for billing and approval processes
  - **Primary links** to address, project and job, displayed in the tree view and in analyses
  - **General links** to any other data records
- **Creation** in the **New** menu, the toolbar of data record windows and list views, in the tree view and in the time record calendar
- **Global search** in all time record fields such as **Subject**, **Start** and **End**. Configurable via **Settings > Search**; search toolbar abbreviation **TR**
- **Views** in the program navigator (list, dossier, calendar) and in the link navigator (link list, calendar)
- **Time zone support** (**Start** and **End** fields in client time zone with Timezone module)

### 7.1.2 Creating time records

You can create time records for addresses, appointments, documents, e-mails, holiday entries, jobs, opportunities, phone calls, projects and tasks.

 **Create time record:** To create a time record for another data record, click on the **Create time record** button in the toolbar of its data record window or a list.

 **Start recording time:** To start recording time in the background, proceed as follows.

- ✓ Open the desired data record in the data record window or mark it in a list view.
- ✓ Click on the little arrow next to the **Create time record** button to open the associated menu.
- ✓ Select the **Start recording time** option in the menu.

The data record window for a new time record opens. The **To** and **Actual** fields are updated automatically. A little green man next to the clock in the tray to the bottom right displays that time is being recorded.

 **Exit:** By clicking on this button next to the **To** field you stop the counter. You may now edit and save the time record. If you close the data record window without saving, the time record is dropped.

### 7.1.3 The data record window for time records

- The time record's **Subject** will initially be transferred from the associated data record. As for any data record, you may modify it as desired.

 **User:** Each time record has exactly one participant. When you create a time record, you will be entered here. After saving, the participant can no longer be changed.

- The **Type** specifies the activity and determines internal and external hourly rates.
  - When you create a time record, the type of the associated data record is adopted if a time record type with the same exists.
  - The type may be modified as long as the time record has not been billed.
- You may use the **Status** to implement billing and approval processes.

 **Start and End date:** You may modify the start date as long as the time record has not yet been billed internally.

The end date is adjusted automatically. You can not change it manually.

In time records spanning two calendar days (e.g., from 6:00 PM to 2:00 AM), the end date is set to the following day.

- The **Actual** working time, which will be billed internally, is determined by the time record's duration that you enter via the date and the **From** and **To** fields.

- **Granularity and minimum:** In the Management Console, you specify the time record granularity between 1 second and 1 hour. This is the precision of the **From**, **To** and **Actual** fields and therefore the smallest recordable period.
- **Maximum:** The **Actual** working time to be recorded in a time record may amount to a maximum of 24 hours minus the granularity, spanning up to two calendar days.
- **Rounding:** Time records below the specified granularity will automatically be corrected to the smallest admissible value. For example, with a granularity of 1 minute, entries of 1 second will always be set to 1 minute. Above the specified granularity, time records are rounded commercially (e.g., with a granularity of 1 minute, an entry of 0:01:30 will be rounded up to 2 minutes).
- **Start and end of new time records:** Time records for appointments, phone calls and holiday entries will adopt the start and end of the associated data record.

When you record time in the calendar, the marked interval will be adopted.

Otherwise, the end of your previous time record will be entered as start and the current time will be entered as end. The first time record of the day will adopt the start of your working hours as start.

- **Working hours:** The working hours are read from the settings provided in the Management Console under **Time record > Working hours**.  
For users that have no working hours set there, the working hours stored in the user settings in the **Calendar** tab are accounted for.
- **Person days (PD):** In the default setting, a person day spans 8 hours. You may change this in the Management Console under **Time record > General**.
- **Overlap check:** If overlaps with other time records are detected while trying to save a time record, a list of the overlapping time records is displayed. You can turn the overlap check off in the Management Console under **Time record > General**.
- **Charged:** In addition to the **Actual** working time, each time record has an externally billable **Charged** order value. This is initially zero and may differ from the actual hours or be set equal to it. The order value isn't limited to 24 hours.

 **Apply Actual as Charged:** Here you transfer the **Actual** value to the **Charged** field.

- The **Parent** field displays as in other data records the time record's primary links. If desired, you modify the primary links using the associated features.
- **Internal and external description:** Record here additional notes for the time record. The external description is provided for performance records.
-  **Copy external or internal description:** Here you overwrite the associated notes field with the content of the respective other field.

- **Job:** When you record time for a resource plan, the **Job** panel is displayed in the time record's data record window.

The screenshot shows the 'New Time record...' window with the following data:

General		Tree		Change log		Dossier	
<b>Subject</b> 3.2 Development							
User Antonio Matarazzo							
<b>Type</b> Programming				<b>Status</b>			
<b>From</b> 8:00:00 AM		<b>Start date</b> Thursday, January 31, 2019		<b>To</b> 12:00:00 PM		<b>End date</b> Thursday, January 31, 2019	
<b>Actual</b> 0 PD 4 hrs 00 min				<b>Charged</b> 0 PD 4 hrs 00 min			
<b>Job</b>							
<b>% completed</b> 50		<b>Status</b>		<b>ETC</b> 0 PD 0 hrs 00 min		<b>Time budget remaining</b> 3 PD 2 hrs	
<b>Actual</b> 1 PD 6 hrs 00 min		<b>Charged</b> 1 PD 6 hrs		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Relevant for accounting		<input type="checkbox"/> By working time	
<b>Employee's ETC</b> 0 PD 0 hrs 00 min							
<b>Billed internally by</b>				<b>Billed externally by</b>			
<b>Billed internally on</b>				<b>Billed externally on</b>			
<b>Parent</b> Devemit Ltd., Walter Brooks > CP 3.1 for Devemit Ltd. > 3.2 Development							
<b>Internal text</b>				<b>External text</b>			

- **Completion grade and status:** Here you see the job's completion grade and status. Entered values will be applied when saving, which may complete the job.
  - **Complete job:** Set the completion grade to 100% or select a completion status to complete the job when the time record is saved (see "**Completion grade and completion of jobs**" on page 58).
- **Relevant to accounting:** This shows whether the time record will be added to the resource plan, depending on its type (see "**Relevance to accounting**" on page 58).
- **By working time:** This shows whether the time record's primary job has the **Charge by working time** option selected. The **Actual** value will then be copied to the **Charged** field if this is configured for the time record's type, regardless of the time budget and overbooking settings (see "7.1.7 Time record details in projects and jobs" on page 104). This also disables the overbooking check.
- **Working time:** The **ETC**, **Time budget remaining**, **Actual** and **Charged** values come from the resource plan. Under **Job**, the current time record is always considered even if you have not yet saved it.

- **ETC:** Here you see the total currently estimated working time to completion. This is reduced by time records in the planning period that are relevant to accounting.

Time records that are relevant to accounting first reduce the **ETC** value in the associated week. With automatic or monthly planning, time records that are relevant to accounting and exceed the **ETC** value planned for the associated week then reduce the **ETC** values planned for the weeks during the remaining duration of the job (with automatic planning) or month (with monthly planning).

See section „Time records and overbooking“ on page 76 for details about this.

- **Actual:** Here you see the working time already recorded in the resource plan.
- **Time budget remaining:** Here you see the time budget minus the order value.
- **Charged:** Here you see the order value already recorded in the resource plan.
- ... **Employee's ETC:** Here you enter an estimate for the remaining working time. You must also enter a reason to confirm the estimate. After you have confirmed, the estimate will be stored with the resource plan.

You must first activate the estimate in the Management Console under **Project > Resource planning > Booking of time recordings**.

- **Bill working time externally:** In addition to the relevance for accounting, under **Project > Resource planning > Booking of time recordings** in the Management Console, you specify for which time record types the **Actual** value will automatically be transferred to the **Charged** field.
- The **Overbooking check** applies when saving a time record. When active, this setting prevents that time records overbooking the associated resource plan can be saved. This is the case when the resource plan's **Actuals** (including the current time record) exceed its **Time budget** and no additional **ETC** has been cleared.
  - In the Management Console, you can activate or deactivate this check and specify a percentage by which overbooking is permissible (e.g., with a 50% setting, a resource plan with a **Time budget** of 1 pd may be booked with total **Actuals** of up to 1.5 pd). You can find these settings under **Project > Resource planning > Booking of time recordings** (see "Booking of time recordings" on page 206).
  - Additional **Actuals** of a new or modified time record never count as overbooking if they don't exceed the the resource plan's **ETC** before the change.
  - The **Charge by working time** option, if set in the associated job, disables the check (see "7.1.7 Time record details in projects and jobs" on page 104).

- **Recording by duration:** via the **Project time recording** app in CAS genesisWorld Web, with the other right of the same name, you can create time records by duration for project jobs (see "7.2.1 Project time recording" on page 106). Such time records only have a **Duration (Actual field)** and **Date (Start field)** instead of a start and end point.

Edit Software development for NOMOSYS | 2.3 Test ...  
 File Edit View Insert Search Tools ?  
 Save&Close Save Print Upload Download Refresh  
 Action Short notes Send Link with New link Report...  
 General Tree Change log Dossier  
 Created by Antonio Matarazzo on 2/8/2019 1:03:21 PM  
**Subject** Software development for NOMOSYS | 2.3 Test  
 User Antonio Matarazzo  
 Type Programming Status  
 Recording by duration  Date Thursday, February 7, 2019  
 Duration 0 PD 4 hrs 00 min Charged 0 PD 4 hrs 00 min  
**Job**  
 % completed 50 Status  
 ETC 0 PD 0 hrs 00 min Time budget remaining 0 PD 4 hrs 00 min  Relevant for accounting  
 Actual 4 PD 4 hrs 00 min Charged 4 PD 4 hrs 00 min  By working time  
 Employee's ETC 0 PD 0 hrs 00 min  
 Billed internally by Billed externally by  
 Billed internally on Billed externally on  
 Parent NOMOSYS, Jack Bauer Software development for NOMOSYS 2.3 Test  
 Internal text External text

With suitable access rights, the time records will be displayed in the Desktop Client, e.g., in search results or reports.

With the **Project time recording** other right, you have access to the following fields and features in the Desktop Client:

- Subject (adopted from the associated project and job)
- Status
- Duration (Actual), Charged
- Job fields (% completed, Status)
- Internal and external billing
- Internal and external text

You can never edit the time records' user, type, date (start) and primary links (parent) for time records by duration.

Without the **Project time recording** right, all fields and features are locked.

- **To destination, from destination and break for appointments:** Each user may activate the recording of trips to and from the destination and of a break for appointments (see "7.1.8 User settings for time records" on page 104.)

The screenshot shows a software window titled "New Time record...". The window has a menu bar (File, Edit, View, Insert, Search, Tools, ?) and a toolbar with icons for Save&Close, Print, and other actions. Below the toolbar is a navigation bar with tabs for General, Tree, Change log, and Dossier. The main area is a form for creating a time record.

**General**

Subject: **NOMOSYS installation**

User: Peter Grayhound

Type: Service

Status: [Dropdown]

To destination

Type: Travel time

Status: [Dropdown]

From: 7:00:00 AM

Actual: 0 PD 1 hrs 00 min

To: 8:00:00 AM

Value: 0 PD 1 hrs 00 min

From: 8:00:00 AM

Start date: Wednesday, January 30, 2019

To: 5:00:00 PM

End date: Wednesday, January 30, 2019

Actual: 1 PD 0 hrs 00 min

Charged: 1 PD 0 hrs 00 min

Break

From: 12:00:00

To: 1:00:00 PM

From destination

Type: Travel time

Status: [Dropdown]

From: 5:00:00 PM

Actual: 0 PD 1 hrs 00 min

To: 6:00:00 PM

Value: 0 PD 1 hrs 00 min

**Job**

% completed: 100

Status: Completed

ETC: 0 PD 6 hrs 00 min

Time budget remaining: 0 PD 6 hrs 00 min

Actual: 1 PD 2 hrs 00 min

Charged: 1 PD 2 hrs 00 min

Employee's ETC: 0 PD 0 hrs 00 min

Parent: NOMOSYS, Jack Bauer | Software development for NOMOSYS | 2.5 Installation

**Internal text**: Installation on site

**External text**: Installation on site

To do this, select the respective option in the data record window.

- To record the trip to the destination, you enter the start or duration of the trip.
- To record the trip from the destination, you enter the end or duration of the trip.
- If the trips to or from the destination should be billed externally, enter the billable period in the **Charged** field or apply the duration as order value by clicking on the **Copy duration to charged time** button.
- To record a break, enter the start and end of the pause. In the default setting, the pause stretches from 12:30 to 13:30.

Trips to and from the destination will be created as separate time records when you save the record. If available, the **Travel time** type will be assigned automatically.

If you specify a pause, two time records will be created, one before the pause and one after the pause. If the total of **Charged** hours exceeds the **Actual** hours of the first record, the remainder will be booked on the second record.

The **Internal text** and **External text** fields as well as fields placed with Form Designer will be transferred to all time records created this way.

## 7.1.4 Time record calendar

You access the time record calendar via the program navigator, in the dossier and in the **Time records** tab of data record windows.

- **Program navigator and dossier:** The calendar is available in both the program navigator's view wizard and the dossier's view wizard as **Calendar for time recording**.
- **Data record windows:** The calendar is available in the **Time records** tab of the data record windows for addresses, projects, jobs, tasks, appointments, documents, phone calls and holiday entries.
  - **Settings:** In your user settings, you specify under **Modules and Solutions** whether the **Time records** tab is displayed in data record windows. Here you also specify the view's presets (see "7.1.8 User settings for time records" on page 104.)

The screenshot displays the 'Time records' tab in a data record window for 'NOMOSYS installation'. The main area is a calendar grid with columns for dates from Monday, 28.01.2019, to Sunday, 03.02.2019. Rows represent time slots from 6:30 to 18:00. Various activities are recorded in colored blocks: 'E-mails Administration (unlinked)' in blue, '3.2 Development Programming (Job)' in green, '3.5 Training and service Training (Job)' in yellow, and 'NOMOSYS installation Service (Appointment)' in pink. A context menu is visible over the 9:00-10:00 slot on Friday, 01.02.2019, listing actions such as 'Create new time record', 'Create new time record from history', 'Create new time record for resource plan', 'Open time record', 'Delete time record', 'Change link', 'Open corresponding record', and 'Create new time record for the corresponding record'. On the right, a sidebar shows a monthly calendar for January 2019 and a 'Statistics' panel with the following data:

Statistics	
Working hours:	40:00:00
January 2019 total:	176:00:00
Recorded time:	39:00:00
January 2019 total:	203:00:00
Time records:	15
Unlinked time records:	2

Below the statistics, there is a 'User selection' dropdown set to 'Peter Grayhound' and a 'Legend' section with three items: 'Linked time record' (green square), 'Unlinked time record' (blue square), and 'Time record for this record' (pink square).

- **Free time and working hours:** Free time and working hours are displayed with the same colors as in the calendar view for appointments, holidays, jobs and phone calls.

You may change the colors in the **Settings** under **Calendar > Colors**.

Other color settings of the default calendar won't be used.

If available, the current working hours as entered in the Management Console under **Time record > Working hours** are used. For users having no working hours set there, the working hours stored in the **Settings** in the **Calendar** tab are displayed.

- **Colors**
  - **Green:** linked time record
  - **Blue:** unlinked time record
  - **Red:** time record for current data record (in data record windows)

## Note

Please note that a time record's associated data record can not be changed at a later time if it stands below the job level.

For example, a time record created for an appointment stays associated with that appointment, even if the time record's primary links change or a general link between the time record and another data record is created.

Time records created for an address, a project or a job, as well as time records which were not created for another data record, may be assigned to another address, project or job by changing their primary links.

- **Select start date:** At the top right, you select the view's start date.
- **Statistics:** The statistics display information about your working hours and your time records in the displayed period and in the current month.
  - **Working hours:** your working hours in the displayed period. Below it, your total working hours in the selected month are given.
  - **Recorded time:** the total duration of your time records in the displayed period. Below it, the total duration of your time records in the current month is given.
 

Please note that time records by duration created in the **Project time recording** app in CAS genesisWorld Web will be included in both sums (see "**By working time**" on page 92).

Instead of a start and end time, such time records only have a date and a duration. They are not displayed in the time record calendar but their duration is included in the recorded time.
- **Time records:** the number of your time records displayed in the calendar. Below it, the number of displayed time records without an associated data record is given.
- **Select user:** Here you access other users' calendars.
- ✗ **Close shared calendar view:** Here you reset the view to display your own time records again.

## Creating and editing time records

The following sections describe the features for creating and editing time records in the time record calendar.

-  **Create new time record:** Here you create a time record in the marked interval. Alternatively, you create a time record in the marked interval by right-clicking and selecting the **Create new time record** option in the calendar's context menu.
  - **Create new time record from history:** With this option in the calendar's context menu, you create a new time record for one of the data records for which you have last recorded time. Only the primary links and the type of the original time record are adopted.
  - **Create new time record for resource plan:** With this option in the calendar's context menu, you record time for a current resource plan.
  - **Fill gaps:** If you mark a period in which time records and gaps alternate and create a time record from history or for a resource plan, each gap in the marked period will be replaced by a corresponding time record.  
  
This also applies when overlap checks are disabled for time records.
  - **Create new time record for the corresponding record:** Open a time record's context menu and select the **Create new time record for the corresponding record** option to create a time record for the same data record.
- **Change link:** You may relink time records via the history. To do this, open the context menu by right-clicking on the time record whose link you wish to change. Select the desired option in the **Change link** sub-menu.
- **Open corresponding record:** Here you open the data record for which the time record was created.
-  **Open time record:** Here you open the selected time record. Alternatively, you open time records by double-clicking on them or via the context menu.
-  **Delete time record:** Here you delete the selected time record. Alternatively, you delete time records via the context menu. Before the time record is deleted you are asked for confirmation.
-  **Record appointments:** Here you record time for all appointments in the displayed period. If there is a time record type of the same name, the type of each appointment is adopted as the type of the associated time record.
-  **Record phone calls:** Here you record time for all appointments in the displayed period. If there is a time record type of the same name, the type of each phone call is adopted as the type of the associated time record.
-  **Record holiday:** Here you record time for holiday entries in the displayed period. In the process, a separate time record is created for each day off, spanning from start to end of the participant's working hours.

This operation will be available even if part of the holiday entry to record is farther in the future than time records may be created (see "Time window for the creation and editing of time records" on page 210) if time is to be recorded for a current holiday or a holiday starting on the next work day in the time record calendar.

## Note

In the Management Console, under **Time record > Calendar**, you specify which appointment phone call and holiday types may be recorded here (see "9.4.3 Calendar" on page 213). If you wish to group holiday records by projects in reports, you may also select projects there for which leaves should be recorded. If a participant of such a project records his leave by clicking on **Record holiday** in the calendar, the holiday records will be automatically assigned to the project.

 **Print:** Here you print the displayed calendar page. Please note that the **Print** option in the **File** menu is not supported here. Use the **Print** button in the view's toolbar.

 **Refresh view:** Here you apply changes that were made to the time records while the view was open.

- **Change points of time:** move time records or change the duration via drag-and-drop.
  - **Move time record**
    - ✓ Click on the time record's start and hold the mouse button.
    - ✓ Holding the mouse button, move the pointer to the desired start time.
  - **Change duration**
    - ✓ Click on the time record's end and hold the mouse button.
    - ✓ Holding the mouse button, set the desired duration by moving the mouse.

## Creating a time record calendar in the program navigator

You insert the view in your program navigator in the following way.

- ✓ Right-click on the desired place to call up the context menu.
- ✓ Select **Create new view**. The view wizard opens.
- ✓ Select **Calendar for time recording**. Then click **Next**.
- ✓ Enter the desired name for the view. Then click **Next**.
- ✓ **Start date**
  - **Today**: In the default setting, the view displays the current date.
  - **Previous week**: With this option, the previous week will be displayed.
  - **This date**: With the **Use current month** or **Use current year** options, the current month or year is substituted.
- ✓ **Display mode**: Select here whether the day or week display should be used and specify the desired detail level (hours, half hours, quarter hours or 5 minutes).
- ✓ **User**: Select here the user whose time records should be displayed. Resources are also available for selection.
- ✓ Complete the creation by clicking **Finish**.

## 7.1.5 Billing time records

In a time record's data record window and in the list's context menu, you may bill time records internally or externally or undo billing.

- **Internal billing:** When a time record is internally billed, the following information is written in the associated time record fields.
  - **Internally billed by:** user
  - **Internally billed on:** date and time
  - **Internal hourly rate:** the current internal hourly rate for the user and type
  - **Actual costs:** internal hourly rate times **Actual**; values are stored with up to 4 decimals and displayed in lists and report views rounded to 2 decimals.

In internally billed time records and without reading rights for the **Billed internally by/on** fields, the **Type**, **From**, **To**, **Actual** and **Start** fields may no longer be edited.

- **External billing:** When a time record is externally billed, the information is written in the associated time record fields.
  - **Externally billed by:** user
  - **Externally billed on:** date and time
  - **External hourly rate:** the current external hourly rate for the user and type
  - **Actual turnover:** the external hourly rate times **Charged**; values are stored with up to 4 decimals and displayed in lists and report views rounded to 2 decimals.

In externally billed time records and without reading rights for the **Billed externally by/on** fields, the **Type** and **Charged** fields may no longer be edited.

 **Billing in the time record list:** In the context menu for the time record list, you may access the **Bill** sub-menu. The **Apply Actual as Charged** and **Set Charged to Null** options are only available with writing permissions for the **Charged** field.

Additionally, reading permissions for the **Actual** field are required for the **Apply Actual as Charged** option.

The options **Bill externally** and **Reset the bill externally option** are only available with writing permissions for the **Externally billed on** and **Externally billed by** fields.

The options **Bill internally** and **Reset the bill internally option** are only available with writing permissions for the **Internally billed on** and **Internally billed by** fields.

You also need reading permissions for all time record fields in order to bill time records.

 **Apply Actual as Charged:** Here you overwrite the **Charged** field with the **Actual** value in all selected time records.

 **Set Charged to Null:** Here you reset the **Charged** field in all selected time records.

 **Bill internally:** Here you internally bill all selected time records.

 **Reset the bill internally option:** Here you cancel internal billing.

 **Bill externally:** Here you externally bill all selected time records.

 **Reset the bill externally option:** Here you cancel external billing.

- **Billing in the data record window:** In the lower third of the data record window for a time record, you can see the **Internally billed by**, **Internally billed on**, **Externally billed by** and **Externally billed on** fields.

 **Bill internally:** Here you bill the time record internally or cancel internal billing. The button is only available with writing permissions for the **Internally billed on** and **Internally billed by** fields. You also need reading rights for all time record fields.

 **Bill externally:** Here you bill the time record externally or cancel external billing. The button is only available with writing permissions for the **Externally billed on** and **Externally billed by** fields. You also need reading rights for all time record fields.

- **Billing in the report view:** In the **Billing** tab of a report view's properties, you can turn on the billing features in the view:
  - **Display button to internally bill time records**
  - **Display button to externally bill time records**

You can access the billing features via the **Billing** menu in the report view's toolbar.

First select the desired time records in the view. Then select the desired billing action in the **Billing** menu. This works like in the time record list. The same restrictions also apply.

Other features of the **Billing** menu are described in section "7.8 Billing in reports (Desktop Client only)" on page 143.

- **Specify external billing date:** With the **Bill externally** setting under **Time records > General** in the Management Console, you determine whether the external billing date may be modified. In this case, you can edit the **Externally billed on** field in the data record window and will be prompted to enter the billing date when billing time records externally via the time record list or report view.

## 7.1.6 Defining hourly rates for addresses and projects

In the toolbars of the data record windows for each addresses and projects, the **Hourly rates** button is available. Here you define hourly rates for a customer and thereby for all associated projects or hourly rates for a project. You may specify different hourly rates for a company and associated contact persons.

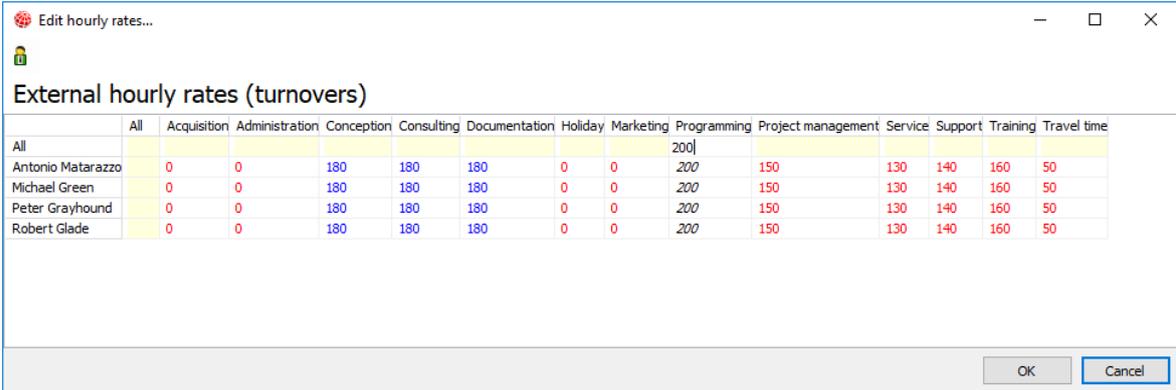
You may enter global hourly rates in the **Time record** area of the Management Console under **Hourly rates**. There, you also specify whether individual internal hourly rates may be entered for addresses and projects. By default, only individual external hourly rates may be entered for addresses and projects (see "9.4.4 Hourly rates" on page 214).

Entering hourly rates for addresses and projects requires the **Time record: hourly rates** right. You can assign it in the Management Console under **User Management** in the **Other rights** tab of the user's **Properties** dialog.

Hourly rates for an address take precedence over global hourly rates.

Hourly rates for a project take precedence over hourly rates for an address.

 **Hourly rates:** Here you open the hourly rates view.



	All	Acquisition	Administration	Conception	Consulting	Documentation	Holiday	Marketing	Programming	Project management	Service	Support	Training	Travel time
All									200					
Antonio Matarazzo	0	0		180	180	180	0	0	200	150	130	140	160	50
Michael Green	0	0		180	180	180	0	0	200	150	130	140	160	50
Peter Grayhound	0	0		180	180	180	0	0	200	150	130	140	160	50
Robert Glade	0	0		180	180	180	0	0	200	150	130	140	160	50

 **Transfer hourly rates:** When internal hourly rates for addresses and projects have been activated in the Management Console, you may overwrite any values entered in the current view that are displayed in black with the respective values from the other view, **Internal** or **External**. This will also empty fields if the respective fields in the other view are empty. You may apply this change with **OK** or revert it with **Cancel**.

 **Select participants:** Here you select the users and resources you wish to enter hourly rates for. Users and resources for which hourly rates have already been entered for the current address or project will be selected automatically. When entering hourly rates for a project, any other project participants will also be selected.

When you remove a participant with hourly rates entered in the current view (address or project) that are displayed in black, these will be deleted after confirmation.

- **Global hourly rates** will be displayed in red. They are still valid for all users and types for which you have not specified different hourly rates.

- **Hourly rates for the address** will be displayed in blue when entering hourly rates for a project. They are valid in all projects for the address for all users and types for which you have not specified different hourly rates.
- **Entering hourly rates:** See page 215 for details.
- **OK:** Here you apply any changes you have made to the database.
  - **Transferring changes made to the company to contact persons:** If you change the hourly rates for a company, you will be asked whether the changes should also be transferred to the associated contact persons. In this case, the previous hourly rates for the contact persons will be overwritten.
- **Cancel:** Here you revert any changes.

### 7.1.7 Time record details in projects and jobs

In the **Details** tab of the data record window for projects, you may lock the project for time recording (see "3 Project details" on page 39).

In the **Details** tab of the data record window for jobs, you may lock the job for time recording. In addition, you may turn off the limitation of order value by time budget.

- **Lock for time recording:** When this option is set in a project or job, time records can no longer be created for the project or job. The **Actual** field in existing time records assigned to locked projects or jobs can no longer be modified.

#### Note

The flexible job hierarchy is not considered here.

Sub-tasks of locked tasks won't be locked automatically as well.

- **Charge by working time:** If this option is selected in a job, the **Actual** value is transferred to the **Charged** field whenever time is recorded for a resource plan in the job if the **Bill externally (automatically adopt Actual as Charged as long as time budget remains)** option is set for the time record's type.

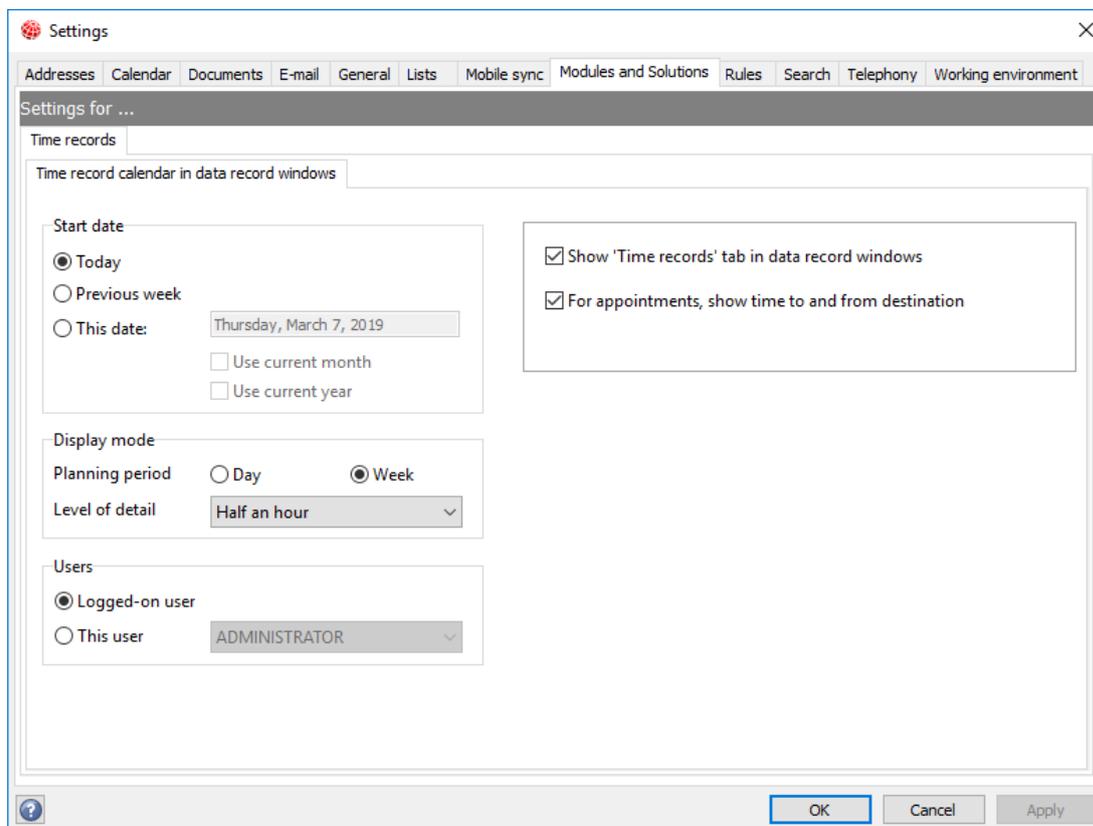
This also disables the overbooking check for associated time records.

### 7.1.8 User settings for time records

In your **Settings**, you configure the time record calendar in data record windows and time records for appointments. These settings only affect you.

To open your **Settings**, select the associated option from the **Tools** menu in either of the main or **Search** window or in any data record window. Then switch to the embedded **Time records** tab of the **Modules and Solutions** tab to edit time record settings.

## Time record calendar in data record windows



- **Start date:** Here you specify the start date of the time record calendar in the **Time records** tab of data record windows and in the dossier.
  - **Today:** In the default setting, the view displays the current date.
  - **Previous week:** With this option, the previous week will be displayed.
  - **This date:** With the **Use current month** or **Use current year** options, the current month or year is substituted.
- **Display mode:** Select here whether the day or week display should be used and specify the desired detail level (hours, half hours, quarter hours or 5 minutes).
- **User:** Select here the user whose time records should be displayed. Resources are also available for selection.
- **Show 'Time records' tab in data record windows:** Here you specify whether the **Time records** tab will be displayed in the data record windows of addresses, projects, jobs, tasks, appointments, documents, phone calls and holiday entries.
- **For appointments, show time to and from destination:** Here you specify whether panels for recording the time to and from your destination and a break will be displayed when you record time for appointments.

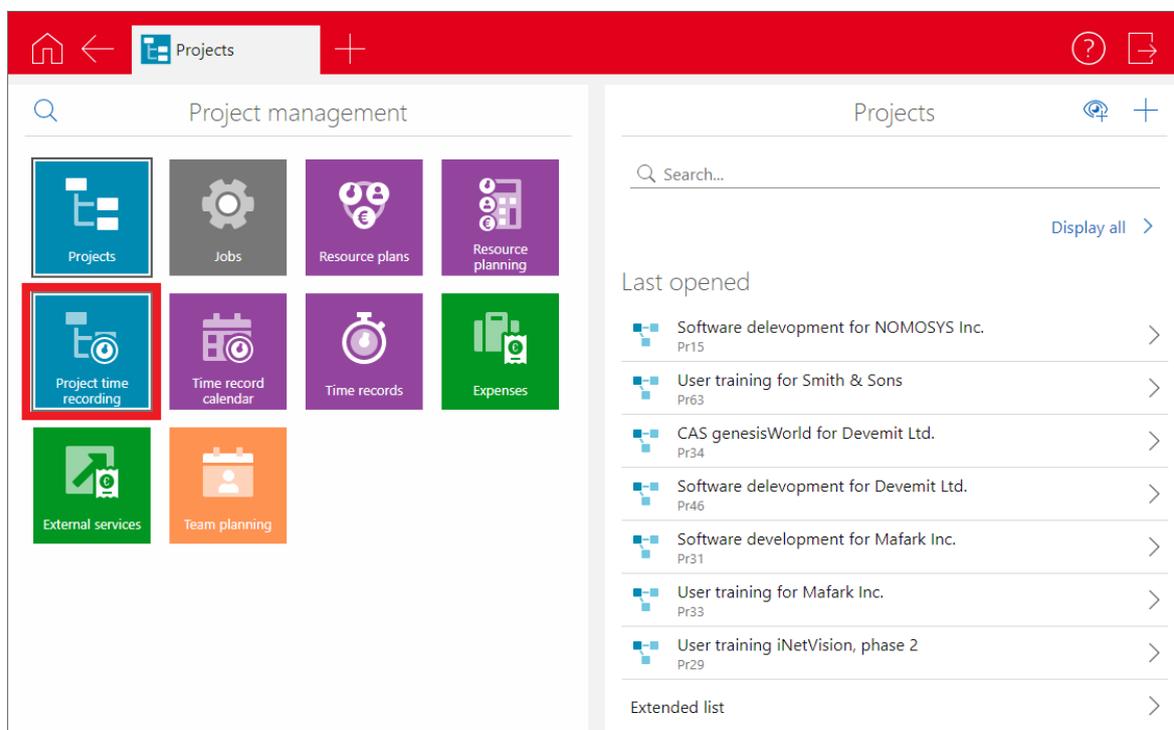
## 7.2 Time records in the Web Client

These apps are available for time records in the Web Client under **Project management**.

- 7.2.1 Project time recording (page 106)
- 7.2.2 Time record calendar (page 109)
- 7.2.3 Time records (page 111)

### 7.2.1 Project time recording

With the **Project time recording** app in the **Project management** group, you can see and edit time records by duration for project jobs.



You need the **Project time recording** other right to access the app.

- ✓ Open the app by clicking on the associated tile.

Project time recording		Mon Jul 4.	Tue Jul 5.	Wed Jul 6.	Thu Jul 7.	Fri Jul 8.	Recorded	ETC
Peter Grayhound								
Administration (internal)	01/01/2022 - 12/31/2022, CAS Software UK	0:30	1:00	1:00			2:30	0:00
Administration (internal)	01/01/2022 - 12/31/2022, Administration	0:30	1:00	1:00			2:30	0:00
CAS genesisWorld for Devemit Ltd.	02/08/2021 - 06/19/2021, Devemit GmbH	5:30	3:00				8:30	10:10
4 Customization and Installation	06/27/2022 - 07/15/2022, Programming	5:30	0:00	3:00			5:30	6:10
5 Training and service	07/04/2022 - 07/21/2022, Training	0:00	3:00				3:00	4:00
Software development for NOMOSYS Inc.	04/05/2021 - 06/18/2021, NOMOSYS Inc.		2:30				2:30	29:30
3.3 Installation	06/27/2022 - 07/07/2022, Service	0:00	2:30				2:30	21:30
3.4 User training	07/04/2022 - 07/21/2022, Training	0:00	0:00				0:00	8:00
Time record calendar		2:00	1:30	2:00			5:30	
Holiday						8:00	8:00	
Recorded		8:00	8:00	3:00	0:00	8:00	27:00	
Working hours		8:00	8:00	8:00	8:00	8:00		

## ■ Displayed jobs

- The app initially displays all of your project jobs with a resource plan starting in or before the current week.
- Via the **Settings** button with the slider icon, you can create additional project jobs by entering filter settings. No remaining hours will be displayed for such jobs.
- Jobs with a resource plan will only be displayed if they have a **Type** which is also available as a time record type configured as **Relevant for accounting** or as **Only for resource planning** under **Project > Resource planning > Booking of time recordings** in the Management Console.
- Additionally, for any jobs with a **Type** which is also available for time records, link conditions (Management Console **Time record > Mandatory links**) are considered as well. If creating a time record for a job in the app would violate such a condition, that job won't be available.

## ■ Workloads and working hours

- In the job rows, enter the hours worked during the displayed week.
- The project rows display the workload per project.
- The **Time record calendar** row displays other hours recorded during the displayed week. Please note that this may currently include hours worked for displayed jobs which were not entered in the app.
- The **Holiday** row displays working hours on vacation days in the displayed week.
- The **Recorded** row displays daily and weekly totals of all entered hours whether they were recorded in the app or not, plus working hours on vacation days.
- The **Working hours** row displays your daily working hours.

- The **Recorded** column displays recorded times per project, job and week.
- The **ETC** column displays the remaining workload entered per job for you via the associated resource plans for the displayed week.

Associated time records reduce this value. If you enter more time than planned for a week, with automatic or monthly planning this also reduces the **ETC** planned for the remainder of the job duration or month, which affects the **ETC** values assigned to the associated weeks.

See section „Time records and overbooking“ on page 76 for details about this.

- **Displayed period**

- Initially, the current week will be displayed.
- Use the timeline below the view to switch to another week.
- Alternatively, jump to a specific date or to the current date (**Today**) via the toolbar.

- **Entering times**

- Click in a blue field and enter worked hours.
  - Confirm by hitting [Return] or by clicking on the check mark icon.
  - Cancel by hitting [Esc] or by clicking on the cross icon.
  - Click on the pen to create the time record in the detail view.
- Click in a red field to change or delete the associated time record.
  - Make the desired change or clear the hours to delete the time record, then confirm. The remaining hours will be redistributed according to the change.
  - Enter 0 to create a time record with a zero duration or to set the duration of an existing time record to zero.
  - Click on the pen to edit time record details.
- Time records in the future or for jobs with an overbooked resource plan (**ETC = 0** oder **Actual**  $\geq$  [**Time budget**+ **Time budget** \* **Overbooking degree**], see "Booking of time recordings" on page 206) are not permitted.

In these cases, the associated table fields will be gray and may not be edited.

- Time records in the past are permitted.

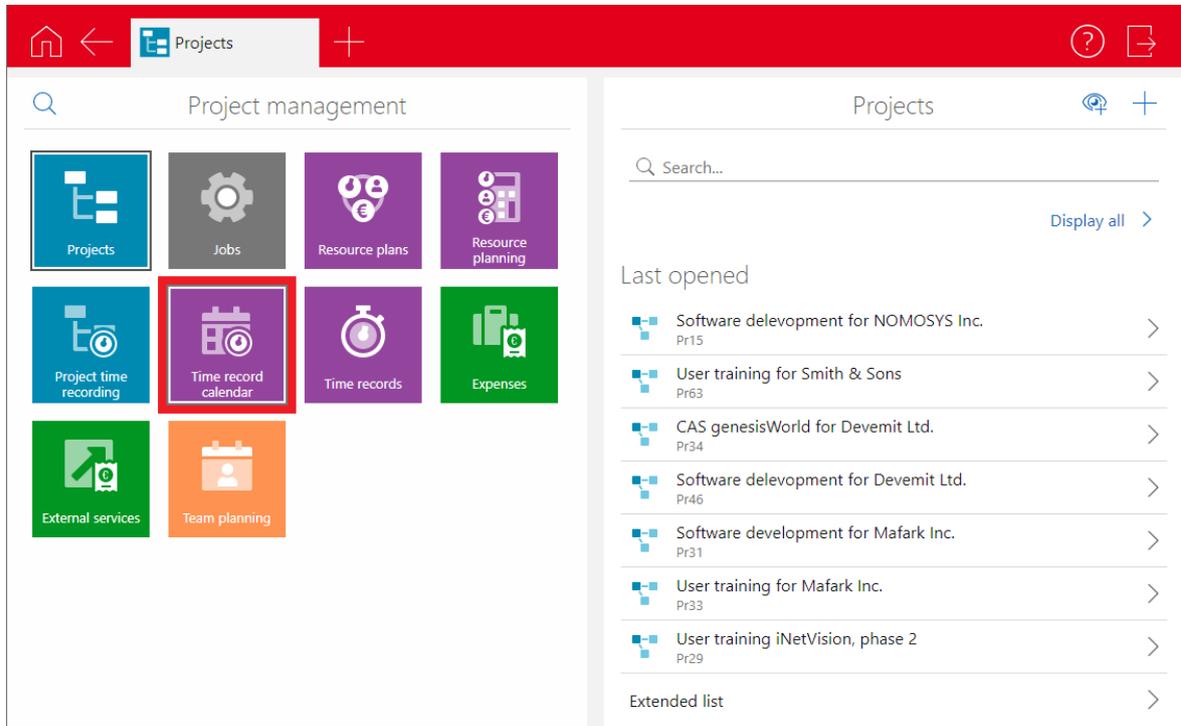
- **Specifics of time records by duration**

- Time records by duration only have a date and duration. Unlike other time records, they don't have a specific start and end time. For more details about the specifics of time records by duration, see "**Recording by duration**" on page 94.

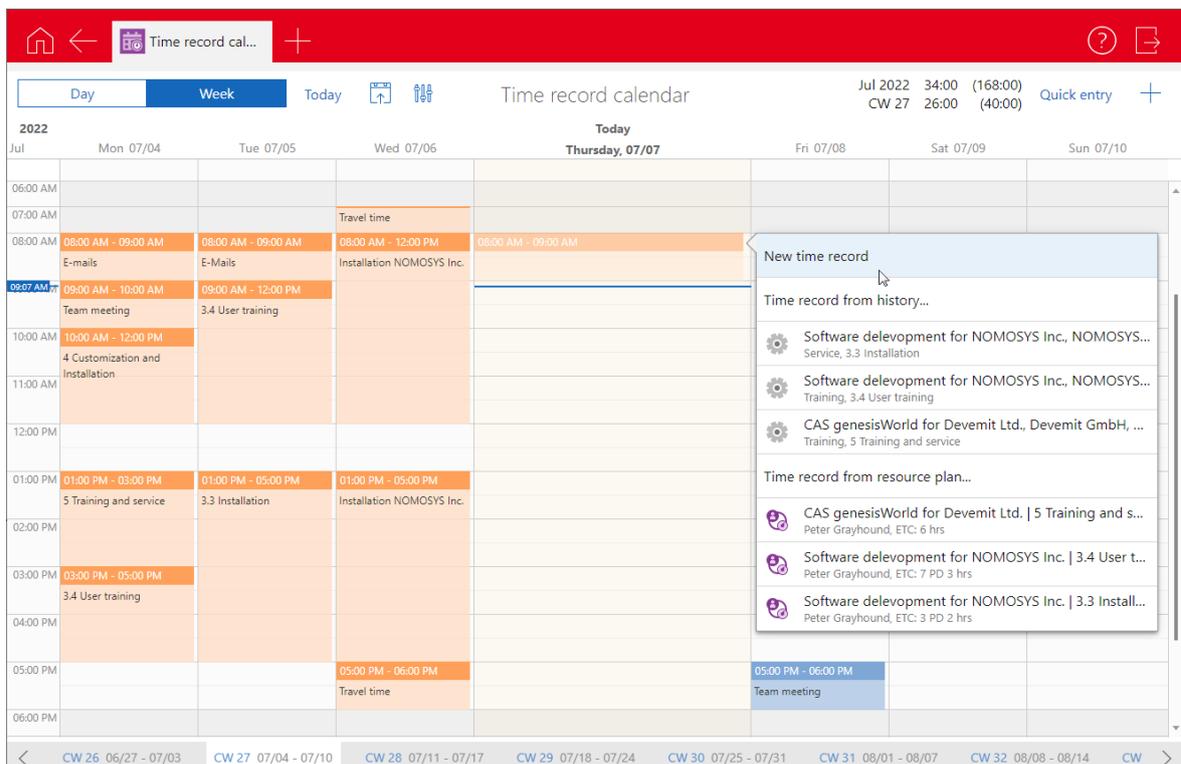
Click on the question mark at the top right to open the online help pages for more details.

## 7.2.2 Time record calendar

With the **Time record calendar** app in the **Project management** app group, you can see and edit time records for the current day or week.



✓ Open the app by clicking on the associated tile.



- The calendar can display time records, appointments, holiday entries and phone calls.

Optionally, public holidays are also displayed.

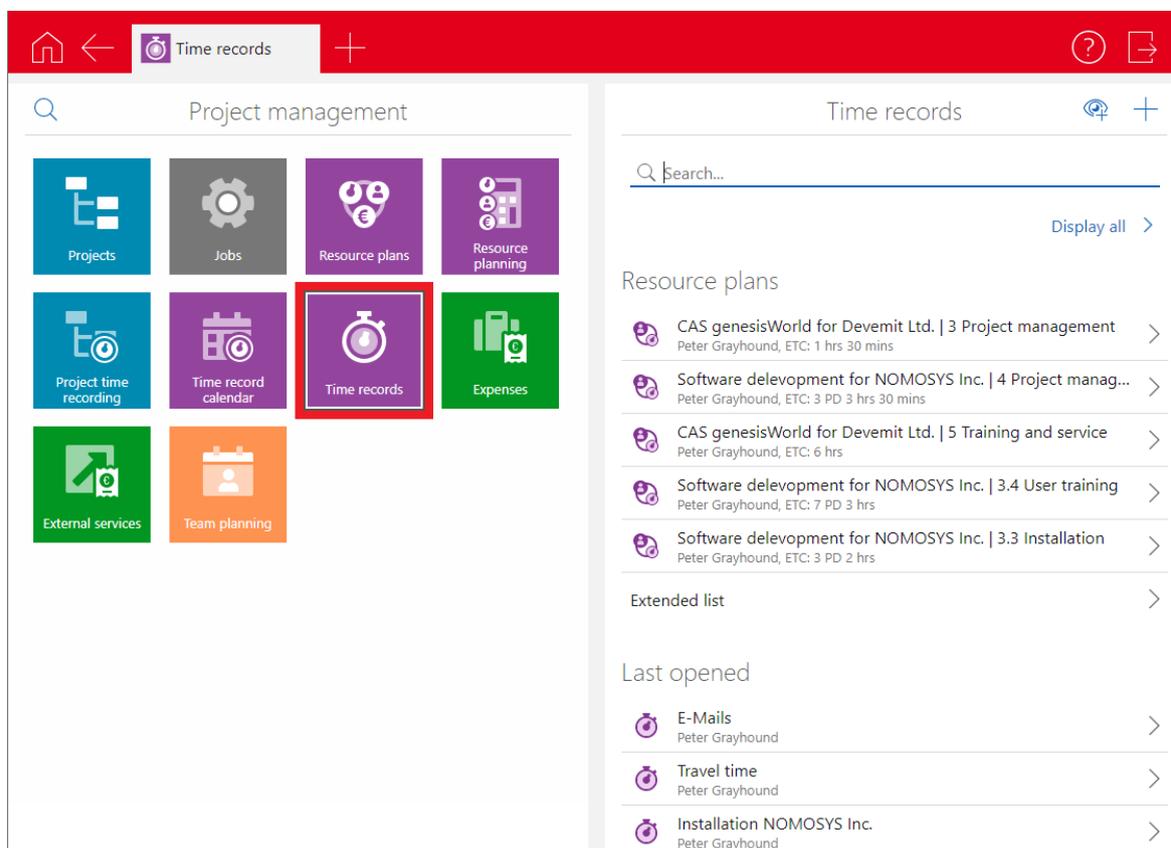
To select the data records to display and whether public holidays are displayed, click on the **Settings** button with the slider icon.

- The statistic, like in the Desktop Client, displays your recorded time and working hours in the displayed period and in the current month.
- Select a period or click a data record to create a time record.
  - When selecting a period, a history is available.
  - You can also select from among all your open resource plans. Any resource plan with **ETC** > 0 will be displayed, even if the End of the associated job is in the past.
  - When clicking on an out of office appointment, you can enter travel times to and from the destination and a break.
- The **Quick entry** record past appointments, holiday entries and phone calls in the displayed period, including data records that are not currently displayed.

Click on the question mark at the top right to open the online help pages for more details.

## 7.2.3 Time records

With the **Time records** app in the **Project management** app group, you can see and edit existing time records as well as create new ones.



- In the **Time records** app start, you have access to your current resource plans, time records and time records views.
- Click on the eye icon to create a new time record list view.
- Click on a resource plan or time record to open its detail view. You can also edit or delete it here.
- Click on the plus [+] icon to create a new time record, which will initially not be associated with any other data record.
- Via the radial menu for a resource plan, you can record time for it.
- Additionally, you can create time records for most other data records.

To do this, in the associated detail view, open the action menu with the three dots [...] and select **Create > Record time**.

Alternatively, you can record time via the radial menu for a data record in a list.

Click on the question mark at the top right to open the online help pages for more details.

## 7.3 Expenses in the Desktop Client

The following sections describe how you record expenses in the Desktop Client:

- 7.3.1 Views and features for expenses (page 112)
- 7.3.2 Expenses in addresses, projects, jobs and appointments (page 113)
- 7.3.3 The data record window for per diem (page 114)
- 7.3.4 The data record window for travel costs (page 117)
- 7.3.6 The data record window for lump sum expenses (page 121)
- 7.3.7 Expense settings in the project (page 122)
- 7.3.8 Billing expenses (page 122)

### 7.3.1 Views and features for expenses

The following standard features are available for expenses in the Desktop Client.

- **Data record window** with **General**, **Tree**, **Change log** and **Dossier** tabs
  - **Type** for unambiguous labelling and distinction of **Per diem**, **Travel costs**, **Expense receipts** and **Lump sums**
  - **Status** for billing and approval processes
  - **Currency**, system base currency by default, may be converted via the **Tools** menu for all expense types except for **Per diems**
  - **Primary links** to address, project and job, displayed in the tree view and in analyses
  - **General links** to any other data records
- **Creation** in the **New** menu, in the toolbar of data record windows and list views, in the tree view as well as in the **Expenses** tab of the data record windows for addresses, projects, jobs and appointments
- **Global search** in all fields such as **Subject**, **Start** and **End**. Configurable via **Settings > Search**; search toolbar abbreviation **EX**
- **Views** in the program navigator (list, dossier, tree) and in the link navigator (link list)

### 7.3.2 Expenses in addresses, projects, jobs and appointments

You record expenses for addresses, projects, jobs and appointments in the **Expenses** tab of the respective data record window. Here you also see any expenses already recorded for the data record. If they all have the same currency, the total costs and turnover from expenses will also be displayed.

The screenshot shows the 'Expenses' tab for 'Installation Devemit (9:00:00 AM, 6:00:00 PM) (delegated)'. The summary shows 'Sum costs (GBP)' and 'Sum turnover (GBP)' both at 277.97. Below the summary are icons for 'Refresh', 'New per diem costs', 'New km bill', 'New receipt for expenses', and 'New lump sum'. A table below lists the following expense records:

Start	User	Subject	Type	Net costs	Gross costs	Turnover
2/7/2019 12:00:00 AM	Antonio Matarazzo	Travel costs from Appointment Installation Devemit	Travel costs	93.15	93.15	93.15
2/6/2019 7:00:00 AM	Antonio Matarazzo	Per diem to Appointment Installation Devemit	Per diem	20.00	20.00	20.00
2/6/2019 12:00:00 AM	Antonio Matarazzo	Hotel to Appointment Installation Devemit	Hotel	71.67	86.00	71.67
2/6/2019 12:00:00 AM	Antonio Matarazzo	Travel costs to Appointment Installation Devemit	Travel costs	93.15	93.15	93.15

**Refresh view:** Here you refresh the view in order to apply changes made at other workplaces. Changes you enter yourself are displayed in the list immediately.

**New per diem costs:** Here you create new expenses of the **Daily expenses** type.

**New km bill:** Here you create new expenses of the **Travel costs** type.

**New receipt for expenses:** Here you create new expenses without a type.

**New lump sum:** Here you create new expenses of the **Lump sum** type.

### 7.3.3 The data record window for per diem costs

The following section describes the data record window for per diem costs.

The screenshot shows the 'New Expenses...' window with the following data record:

<b>Subject</b>	Per diem to Appointment Installation Devenit		
User	Antonio Matarazzo	Number	12946
Date	2/6/2019		
<b>Type</b>	Per diem	<b>Status</b>	Issued
Start date	2/6/2019	Start	9:00 AM
End date	2/8/2019	End	6:00 PM
Country	United Kingdom	Overnight stay	<input type="checkbox"/>
Breakfast arrival day	<input type="checkbox"/>	Breakfast departure day	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Lunch arrival day	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Lunch departure day	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Dinner arrival day	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Dinner departure day	<input type="checkbox"/>
Breakfast intermediate days	1	Breakfast (number)	2
Lunch intermediate days	1	Lunch (number)	3
Dinner intermediate days	1	Dinner (number)	2
Subsistence allowance	35.00		
Net costs (GBP)	35.00	Turnover (GBP)	35.00
Billed internally by		Billed externally by	
Billed internally on		Billed externally on	
Parent	Devenit Ltd., Walter Brooks > CP 3.1 for Devenit Ltd. > 3.4 Installation		
<b>Notes</b>	[Empty text area]		

- **Subject:** You may freely modify the subject as in any data record. When you create expenses, the type and associated data record will be entered here.

**User:** Each expenses record has exactly one participant. When you create expenses, you will be entered here. If desired, change the user to whom the expenses are due.

**Date:** Unlike travel costs and receipt records, per diem costs have a start and end date. The **Date** field displays the start date in per diem costs.

**Number:** Here you create the next free number. You modify numbering settings in the Management Console under **Miscellaneous > Number assignment**.

- **Calculate manually:** This option may be activated in the Management Console (see "General" on page 200) and toggles the automatic calculation. Select this to edit the **Overnight stay**, **Subsistence allowance**, **Net costs** and **Turnover** fields manually. Disable it to have these fields calculated automatically again (see "Notes on the automatic calculation of per diem costs" below).
- **Type and Status:** When the per diem type is selected, the associated fields will be available. By default, the **Per diem** type is used. You can select another type in the Management Console under **Project > Expenses**.

You may use the status to implement billing and approval processes.

## Notes on the automatic calculation of per diem costs

By default, per diem costs will be calculated automatically based on the German regulations for business trips in Germany and from Germany to foreign countries.

In the **Project** area of the Management Console, under **Expenses**, you may switch to a calculation via formulas (with the Form Designer module) or to a manual entry of per diem costs (see "General" on page 200).

Please note that the following per diem field details referring to the calculation don't apply when per diem costs are calculated via formulas or entered manually.

You may implement formulas for the **Subsistence allowance**, **Net costs** and **Turnover** fields. With manual entry, these and the **Overnight stay** field may be edited manually.

See the German version of this manual for more details about the default per diem calculation and rates.

- **Fields for per diem costs**
  - **Start and End:** Via the four fields **Start date**, **Start**, **End date** and **End** you specify the duration of the business trip. The fields for date and time are consolidated to the **Start date** and **End date** fields in the list.

Per diem costs for an appointment will adopt the appointment's start and end.

Per diem costs not created for appointments will adopt the current date.
  - **Country:** The country determines the rates used for the automatic calculation.

In the Management Console, you can add countries or regions via the input help for this field and edit the rates as well as the default setting for the country (see page 200). When you enter per diem costs for business trips to foreign countries, the country is adopted from the primary address, if available.

Please note that regions like **France – Paris** or **Switzerland - Geneva** won't be selected automatically. For corresponding addresses, only the associated country, like **France**, or **Switzerland**, will be entered. In this case, select the appropriate region manually in the **Country** field to use the correct per diem rates.

- **Overnight stay:** Business trips spanning two days without an overnight stay are considered as one continuous activity on the calendar day with the greater absence duration. For such records, the **Overnight stay** option is initially selected. Deselect it to consider the absence as one continuous activity without an overnight stay.
- **Subsistence allowance:** Here you see the sum to be refunded without deductions for breakfasts, lunches and dinners.
- **Number of breakfasts, lunches and dinners:** Here you enter the number of breakfasts, lunches and dinners for which the participant did not need to pay. For each breakfast, 20% of the daily rate is deducted. For each lunch and dinner, 40% of the daily rate is deducted.

The maximum deducted for each day amounts to the subsistence allowance for that day (for an absence above 8 hours or equal to 24 hours).

- **Net costs:** To calculate the total costs, the lump sums intended by the legislator for the respective amounts of travel time spent each day during the trip are totalled.

The breakfasts, lunches and dinners not paid for by the employee are deducted.

You can see and edit the rates in the Management Console under **Project > Expenses** (see page 200).

- **Turnover:** In per diem costs to be billed externally, the net costs are transferred to the **Turnover** field. Select the **Bill externally** checkbox next to the **Turnover** field to externally bill the expenses. In expenses for projects with the **Bill expenses externally** setting, the **Bill externally** checkbox will be selected automatically.
- **Currency:** Determine the currency of the **Subsistence allowance**, **Net costs** and **Turnover** fields using the menu next to the **Net costs** field.

New expenses have the system's base currency by default.

You may change the currency at any time. Converting the currency via the **Tools** menu isn't supported for per diem costs.

### 7.3.4 The data record window for travel costs

The following section describes the data record window for travel costs.

The screenshot shows the 'New Expenses...' window with the following data:

General		Tree	Change log	Dossier
<b>Subject</b>	Travel costs to Appointment Installation Devemit			
User	Antonio Matarazzo	Number	12947	1-2
Date	2/6/2019			
Type	Travel costs	Status	Issued	
Place of departure	Verdant Lane 164, SE1 9RT London, United Kingdom			
Destination	Devemit Ltd., Wellington Street 29, Leeds			
Vehicle	LL68 ABC	<input type="checkbox"/> Private	Distance (miles)	207
Mileage before	23922		Mileage after	24129
Cost/mile (internal) (GBP)	0.45		Cost/mile (external) (GBP)	0.45
Net costs (GBP)	93.15	GBP	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Turnover (GBP)	93.15
			Miles to bill	207
Billed internally by		Billed externally by		
Billed internally on		Billed externally on		
Parent	Deveimit Ltd., Walter Brooks → CP 3.1 for Deveimit Ltd. → 3.4 Installation			
<b>Notes</b>	[Empty text area with Edit and Time stamp icons]			

- **Subject:** You may freely modify the subject as in any data record. When you create expenses, the type and associated data record will be entered here.

**User:** Each expenses record has exactly one participant. When you create expenses, you will be entered here. If desired, change the user to whom the expenses are due.

**Date:** When you create a travel cost record for an appointment, the start of the appointment will be adopted as date. Otherwise the current date will be entered.

**1-2 Number:** Here you create the next free number. You modify numbering settings in the Management Console under **Miscellaneous > Number assignment**.

- **Type and Status:** When the travel costs type is selected, the associated fields will be available. By default, the **Travel costs** type is used. You can select another type in the Management Console under **Project > Expenses**.

You may use the status to implement billing and approval processes.

- **Fields for travel costs**

- **Place of departure and Destination:** The place of departure is taken from the user settings for the route service. You make this setting for every user in **Settings > Addresses > Departure address for routing**.

You can change the place of departure. In this case, enter "Street, Town, Country" in this order and separated by commas if you want to use the place of departure for routing.

The destination is adopted from the primary address.



**Execute route service:** Here you open the route service for determining the route and distance between the place of departure and primary address.

You must enter a primary address to use the route service for travel costs.

Click Calculate route to determine the route and distance.

- **Vehicle:** In the **Database** area of the Management Console, you can set up the selection of vehicles as an input help for the **Vehicle** field in expenses. If you assign a vehicle to a user, it will be selected whenever he or she records travel costs. You may access this setting in the Management Console under **Project > Expenses**.

When a vehicle is entered, the kilometer count of the last travel cost record for the same vehicle will be adopted.

- **Private:** Here you mark private trips to distinguish them from business trips.
- **Kilometer (number):** Specify here the number of kilometers travelled.
  - <sup>x2</sup> **Double distance:** Here you double the distance to include the return trip.
- **Kilometer at start/end:** If you keep a driver's logbook, enter the number of kilometers before and after the business trip. If you have specified a vehicle for which at least one travel cost record exists, the number of kilometers is transferred from the previous travel cost record.
- **Cost per km (internal/external):** Here you see and modify the price per kilometer for the internal and external recording of travel costs. You can change the associated presettings in the Management Console under **Project > Expenses**. You can also modify the prices in any travel cost record.
- **Net costs:** To calculate the net costs, the number of kilometers is multiplied by the internal kilometer price.
- **Turnover:** In travel costs that are to be billed externally, the turnover is calculated by multiplying the number of kilometers to be billed by the external kilometer price.

Select the **Bill externally** checkbox next to the **Turnover** field to externally bill the expenses. In expenses for projects with the **Bill expenses externally** setting, the **Bill externally** checkbox will be selected automatically.

- **Km to be billed:** Here you specify the kilometers to be billed externally. You may preassign this value in the project (see "**Expenses**" on page 40).
- **Currency:** Determine the currency of the **Cost per km (internal)**, **Net costs**, **Cost per km (external)**, and **Turnover** fields using the menu next to the **Net costs** field.

New expenses have the system's base currency by default.

You may change the currency at any time. Via the **Change currency** option in the **Tools** menu, you may specify an exchange rate for converting the currency.

## Notes on the kilometer fields

All kilometer fields may be renamed to use any other unit, such as miles.

### 7.3.5 The data record window for expense receipts

The following section describes the data record window for expense receipts.

- **Subject:** You may freely modify the subject as in any data record. When you create expenses, the type and associated data record will be entered here.

 **User:** Each expenses record has exactly one participant. When you create expenses, you will be entered here. If desired, change the user to whom the expenses are due.

 **Date:** When you create an expense receipt record for an appointment, the start of the appointment will be adopted as date. Otherwise the current date will be entered.

<sup>1,2</sup> **Number:** Here you create the next free number. You modify numbering settings in the Management Console under **Miscellaneous > Number assignment**.

- **Type and Status:** When none of the types for per diems, travel costs or lump sums are selected, the **General** tab will display the fields for expense receipts.

The **Hotel, Taxi, Train, Plane, Park, Local public transfer, Hired car** and **Service** types are provided for expense receipts.

You may use the status to implement billing and approval processes.

- **Fields for expense receipts**

- **Payment method:** Here you select one of the payment methods **Cash, Credit card** or **Bank transfer**.

- **Receipt document:** Here you may link a digital copy of the receipt with the expense record. The receipt must be provided as a document.

 **Search document:** Here you select a document in the **Search** window.

 **Create or open a document:** Here you create a new document from a template or a file and link it to the expense receipt. If a document has already been entered, you open it in the associated data record here.

 **Open document for review:** Here you open the stored file for review.

 **Delete link:** Here you remove the link between the expense receipt and the document. The document will not be deleted in the process.

- **Gross costs, Net costs and VAT rate:** When you enter the gross costs or net costs, the other field will be calculated with the selected VAT rate.

The VAT rates are stored as an input help for the associated field.

If required, you may change the VAT rates under **Database** in the Management Console.

- **Turnover:** Select the **Bill externally** checkbox next to the **Turnover** field to externally bill the expenses. The net costs will be transferred to the **Turnover** field.

In expenses for projects with the **Bill expenses externally** setting, the **Bill externally** checkbox will be selected automatically.

- **Currency:** Determine the currency of the **Gross costs, Net costs** and **Turnover** fields using the menu next to the **Net costs** field.

New expenses have the system's base currency by default.

You may change the currency at any time. Via the **Change currency** option in the **Tools** menu, you may specify an exchange rate for converting the currency.

### 7.3.6 The data record window for lump sum expenses

The following sections describe the data record window for lump sum expenses.

The screenshot shows a software window titled "New Expenses...". It has a menu bar with "File", "Edit", "View", "Insert", "Search", and "Tools". Below the menu bar is a toolbar with icons for "Save&Close", "Print", and "Help". A secondary toolbar contains "Action", "Short notes", "Send", "Link with", "New link", and "Report...". The main area has tabs for "General", "Tree", "Change log", and "Dossier", with "General" selected. The "General" tab contains several input fields and dropdown menus:

- Subject:** A text field containing "Lump sum to Appointment Installation Devenit".
- User:** A text field containing "Peter Grayhound" with a user icon.
- Number:** A text field containing "12949" with a red "1-2" icon.
- Date:** A text field containing "2/6/2019" with a calendar icon.
- Type:** A dropdown menu set to "Lump sum".
- Status:** A dropdown menu set to "Issued".
- Turnover:** A text field containing "500.00" and a currency dropdown set to "GBP".
- Billed internally by:** An empty text field.
- Billed externally by:** An empty text field.
- Billed internally on:** An empty text field.
- Billed externally on:** An empty text field.
- Parent:** A dropdown menu showing a tree structure: "Devenit Ltd., Walter Brooks" > "CP 3.1 for Devenit Ltd." > "3.4 Installation".

At the bottom, there is a "Notes" section with an "Edit" icon and a "Time stamp" icon.

- **Subject:** You may freely modify the subject as in any data record. When you create expenses, the type and associated data record will be entered here.

 **User:** Each expenses record has exactly one participant. When you create expenses, you will be entered here. If desired, change the user to whom the expenses are due.

 **Date:** When you create lump sum expenses for an appointment, the start of the appointment will be adopted as date. Otherwise the current date will be entered.

 **Number:** Here you create the next free number. You modify numbering settings in the Management Console under **Miscellaneous > Number assignment**.

- **Type and Status:** When the lump sum type is selected, the associated fields will be available. By default, the **Lump sum** type is used. You can select another type in the Management Console under **Project > Expenses**.

You may use the status to implement billing and approval processes.

- **Fields for lump sum expenses**

- **Turnover:** For new expenses of the **Lump sum** type, the **Lump sum** specified in the project will automatically be entered as **Turnover**.
- **Currency:** Determine the currency of the **Turnover** field using the menu next to it. New expenses have the system's base currency by default.

You may change the currency at any time. Via the **Change currency** option in the **Tools** menu, you may specify an exchange rate for converting the currency.

### 7.3.7 Expense settings in the project

In the **Details** tab of a project, you enter billing settings for associated expenses (see "**Expenses**" on page 40).

### 7.3.8 Billing expenses

In the data record window for expenses and in the context menu for the list, you may bill expenses internally or externally or undo billing.

Billing writes your user name in the **Internally/Externally billed by** field and the current date and time in the **Internally/Externally billed on** field. Internal and external billing therefore requires writing permissions for the respective two fields.

The **Enter costs as turnover value** and **Set turnover to Null** options will only be available with writing permissions for the **Turnover** and **Bill externally** fields.

Additionally, reading permissions for the **Net costs** field are required for the **Enter costs as turnover value** option.

 **Billing in the expense list:** In the context menu for the expense list, you may access the **Bill** sub-menu.

 **Enter costs as turnover value:** Here you set the **Bill externally** option and overwrite the **Turnover** field with the **Net costs** in all selected expenses.

 **Set turnover to Null:** This deselects the **Bill externally** option and sets the **Turnover** field to Null in all selected expenses.

 **Bill internally:** Here you set the **Internally billed by** and **Internally billed on** fields in all selected expenses.

 **Reset the Bill internally option:** Here you clear the internal billing fields.

 **Bill externally:** Here you set the **Externally billed by** and **Externally billed on** fields in all selected expenses.

 **Reset the Bill externally option:** Here you clear the external billing fields.

- **Billing in the data record window:** In the lower third of the data record window for expenses, you may also access the billing controls.

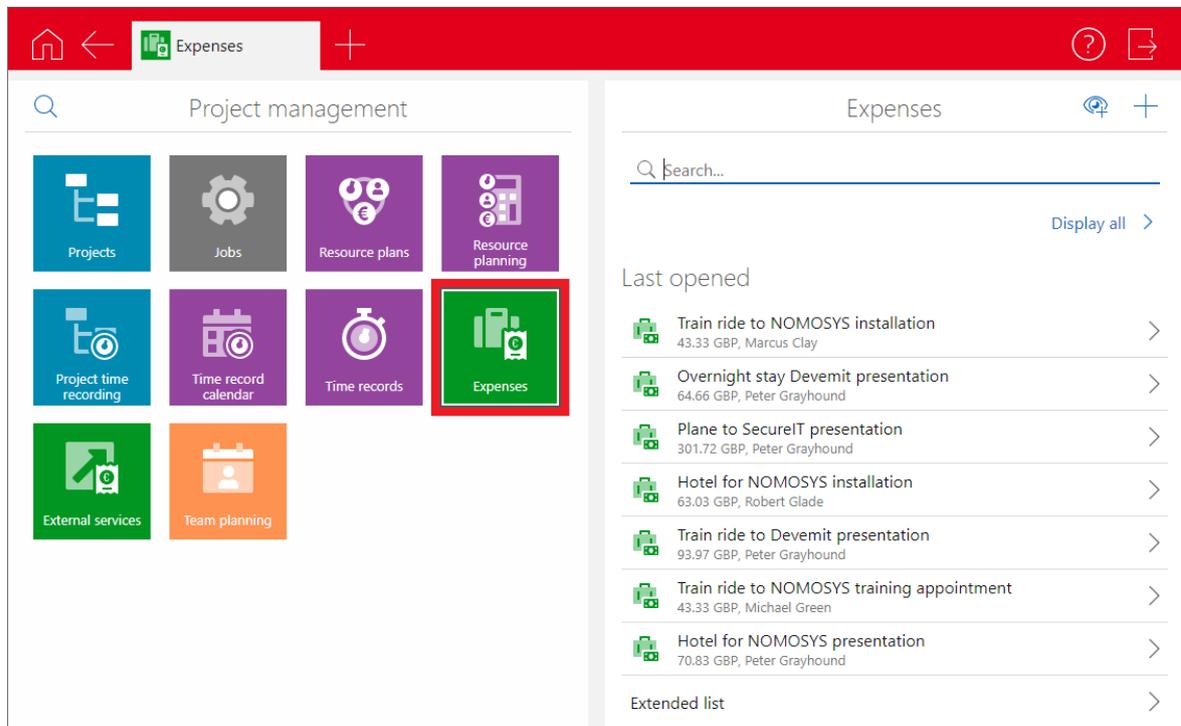
 **Bill internally:** With writing permissions for the **Internally billed on** and **Internally billed by** fields, you may write or reset them here.

 **Bill externally:** With writing permissions for the **Externally billed on** and **Externally billed by** fields, you may write or reset them here.

## 7.4 Expenses in the Web Client

In the Web Client, you have access to the **Expenses** app under **Project management**.

Here you can see and edit existing expenses and create new ones.



- In the **Expenses** app start, you have access to your expenses and associated views.
- Click on the eye icon to create a new list view for expenses.
- Click on an expense record to open the detail view. You can also edit or delete the expense record here.
- Click on the plus icon [+] to create a new expense record. To do this, first select the expense type to create (expense allowance, per diem costs, receipt for expenses or travel expenses bill). The available fields depend on the expense type.
- Additionally, you can create expenses directly for addresses, projects, jobs and appointments. To do this, click on the three dots [...] in the detail view of the associated data record to open the action menu and select the appropriate item under **Create**.
- In the same way, you can create receipts for expenses directly for the associated receipt document and vice versa via the action menu of the associated data record.

When you create a expense receipt for a document, the new expense receipt will adopt the document's primary links. The document will also be entered as receipt document in the expense receipt record.

Click on the question mark at the top right to open the online help pages for more details.

## 7.5 External services in the Desktop Client

The following sections describe how you record external services in the Desktop Client.

- 7.5.1 Views and features for external services (page 124)
- 7.5.2 The External services tab in projects and jobs (page 125)
- 7.5.3 The data record window for external services (page 126)
- 7.5.4 Billing external services (page 128)

### 7.5.1 Views and features for external services

The following standard features are available for external services in the Desktop Client.

- **Data record window** with **General**, **Tree**, **Change log** and **Dossier** tabs
  - **Type** for assignment to a cost center
  - **Currency**, defaults to base currency, may be converted via the **Tools** menu
  - **Primary links** to address, project and job, displayed in the tree view and in analyses
  - **General links** to any other data records
- **Creation** in the **New** menu, in the toolbar of the data record windows and list views, in the tree view as well as in the **External services** tab of the data record windows for projects and jobs
- **Global search** in all fields such as **Subject**, **Start** and **End**. Configurable via **Settings > Search**; search toolbar abbreviation **ES**
- **Views** in the program navigator (list, dossier, tree) and in the link navigator (link list)

## 7.5.2 The External services tab in projects and jobs

You record external services for projects and jobs in the **External services** tab of the respective data record window. Here you also see any external services already recorded for the data record. If they all have the same currency, the total costs and turnover from external services will also be displayed.

2.5 Installation (2/11/2019, 2/16/2019)

Refresh New

To group the column headers, drag them to this area.

Date	Receipt number	Subject	Participants	Type	Net costs	VAT rate	Gross costs	Turnover
2/18/2019	78312617	Hardware installation	All (public)	External costs	2,500.00	20.00	3,000.00	2,500.00
2/18/2019	78312612	Hardware shipment	All (public)	Material costs	3,650.00	20.00	4,380.00	3,650.00

 **Refresh:** Here you refresh the view in order to apply changes made at other workplaces. Changes you enter yourself are displayed in the list immediately.

 **New:** Here you create a new external service.

### 7.5.3 The data record window for external services

The following section describes the data record window for external services.

The screenshot shows a software window titled "Edit Hardware shipment ...". The window has a menu bar (File, Edit, View, Insert, Search, Tools) and a toolbar with icons for Save&Close, Print, Copy, Paste, and Undo. Below the toolbar is a navigation bar with tabs: General (selected), Tree, Change log, and Dossier. A status bar at the top indicates "Created on 2/18/2019 3:41:50 PM from Peter Grayhound".

The main form contains the following fields:

- Subject:** Hardware shipment
- Type:** Material costs
- Date:** 2/18/2019
- Cost unit:** Timothy Goldstein, s.i.g. Computer
- Receipt number:** 78312612
- Receipt:** Hardware shipment receipt
- Gross costs:** 4,380.00 (GBP)
- VAT rate:** 20.00
- Net costs (GBP):** 3,650.00
- Turnover (GBP):** 3,650.00 (checked)
- Billed internally by:** (empty)
- Billed externally by:** (empty)
- Billed internally on:** (empty)
- Billed externally on:** (empty)
- Parent:** NOMOSYS, Jack Bauer > Software development for... > 2.5 Installation

At the bottom, there is a **Notes** section with an "Edit" icon and a "Time stamp" icon.

- **Subject:** You may freely modify the subject as in any data record.
- **Type:** An external service's type specifies the associated cost center.

The **External costs**, **Material costs**, **Personnel costs** and **Travel costs** types are available by default. If desired, you may create additional types as input helps for the external service field **Type** in the **Database** area of the Management Console.

**Date:** Enter the external service's date here.

- **Service provider:** Here you specify the service provider's address.
  - Search address:** Here you select an address in the **Search** window.
  - Open address:** Here you open the entered address.
  - Delete link:** Here you remove the link to the address.

- **Receipt number:** Specify the receipt number here.
- **Receipt document:** Here you may link a digital copy of the receipt with the external service. The receipt must be provided as a document.

**Search document:** Here you select a document in the **Search** window.

 **Create or open a document:** Here you create a new document from a template or a file and link it to the external service. If a document has already been entered, you open it in the associated data record here.

 **Open document for review:** Here you open the stored file for review.

 **Delete link:** Here you remove the link between the external service and the document. The document is not deleted in the process.

- **Gross costs, Net costs and VAT rate:** Transfer the gross costs or net costs as indicated in the receipt into the associated field.

The respective other field will be calculated with the selected VAT rate.

The VAT rates are stored as an input help for the associated field.

If required, you may change the VAT rates in **Database** in the Management Console.

- **Turnover:** Select the **Bill externally** checkbox next to the **Turnover** field to externally bill the external service. The net costs are transferred to the **Turnover** field.

You can manually overwrite the turnover.

When one of the **Gross costs**, **Net costs** or **VAT rate** fields is changed, the **Turnover** field will automatically be overwritten with the new net costs.

- **Currency:** Determine the currency of the **Gross costs**, **Net costs** and **Turnover** fields using the menu next to the **Gross costs** field.

New external services have the system's base currency by default.

You may change the currency at any time. Via the **Change currency** option in the **Tools** menu, you may specify an exchange rate for converting the currency.

## 7.5.4 Billing external services

In the data record window for external services and in the context menu for the list, you may bill external services internally or externally or undo billing.

Billing writes your user name in the **Internally/Externally billed by** field and the current date and time in the **Internally/Externally billed on** field.

The controls for internal and external billing will only be available with writing permissions for both of the associated fields.

The **Enter costs as turnover value** and **Set turnover to Null** options will only be available with writing permissions for the **Turnover** and **Bill externally** fields.

Additionally, reading permissions for the **Net costs** field are required for the **Enter costs as turnover value** option.

 **Billing in the external service list:** In the context menu for the external service list, you may access the **Bill** sub-menu.

 **Enter costs as turnover value:** Here you set the **Bill externally** option and overwrite the **Turnover** field with the **Net costs** in all selected external services.

 **Set turnover to Null:** This deselects the **Bill externally** option and sets the **Turnover** field to Null in all selected external services.

 **Bill internally:** Here you set the **Internally billed by** and **Internally billed on** fields in all selected external services.

 **Reset the Bill internally option:** Here you clear the internal billing fields.

 **Bill externally:** Here you set the **Externally billed by** and **Externally billed on** fields in all selected external services.

 **Reset the Bill externally option:** Here you clear the external billing fields.

- **Billing in the data record window:** In the lower third of the data record window for external services, you may also access the billing controls.

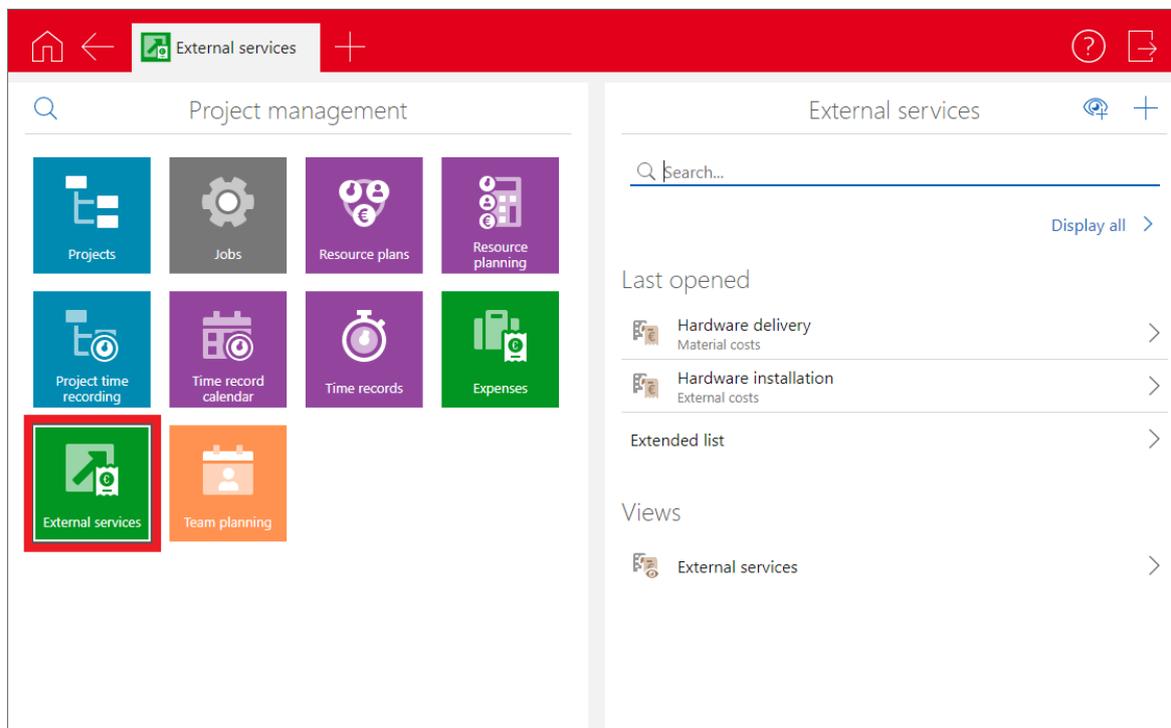
 **Bill internally:** With writing permissions for the **Internally billed on** and **Internally billed by** fields, you may write or reset them here.

 **Bill externally:** With writing permissions for the **Externally billed on** and **Externally billed by** fields, you may write or reset them here.

## 7.6 External services in the Web Client

In the Web Client, you may access the **External services** app under **Project management**.

Here you can see and edit existing external services and create new ones.



- In the **External services** app start, you have access to your external services and associated views.
- Click on the eye icon to create a new list view for external services.
- Click on an external service to open the detail view. You can also edit or delete the external service here.
- Click on the plus icon [+] to create a new external service record.
- Additionally, you can create external service records directly for addresses, projects and jobs. To do this, click on the three dots [...] in the detail view of the associated data record to open the action menu and select **Create > External services**.

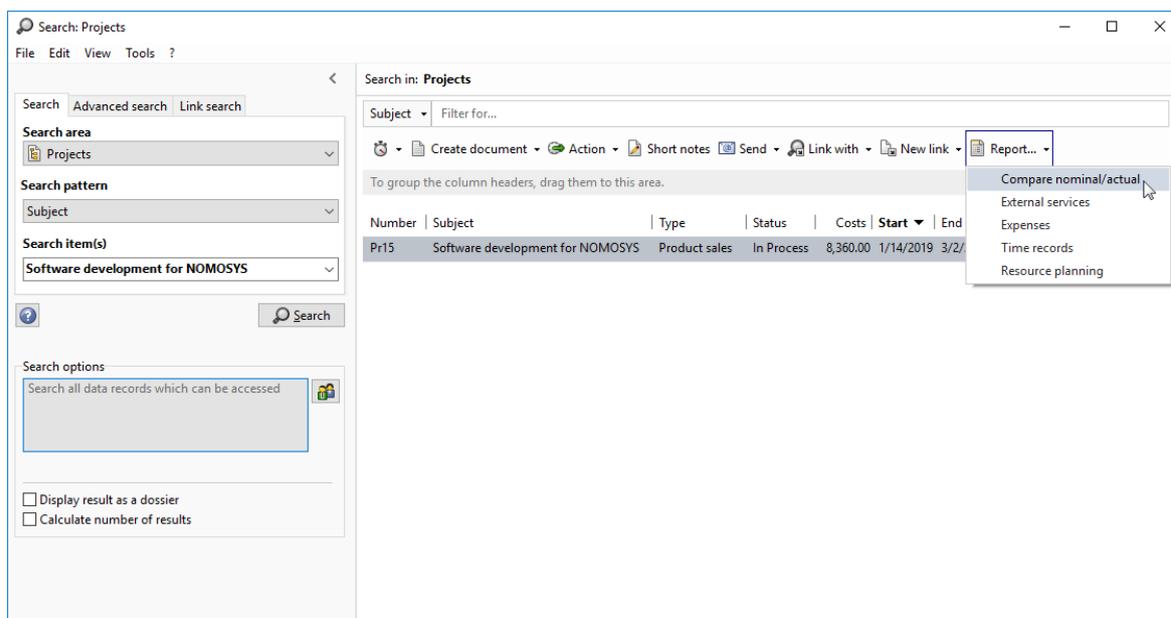
Click on the question mark at the top right to open the online help pages for more details.

## 7.7 Reports for addresses, projects and jobs

With Project, you may access additional reports in the Desktop Client and Web Client.

- 7.7.1 Reports for addresses (page 130)
- 7.7.2 Reports for projects (page 134)
- 7.7.3 Time record report for jobs (page 140)
- 7.7.4 Working with reports (page 141)
- 7.7.5 Editing reports (page 141)

The reports will be added to the favorites of all users that are licensed for the Project module and have been granted the required other rights for the analysis. The reports will then be available in the associated menu, which you open by clicking on the **Report...** button.



### Note

You assign the required other rights to users and groups in the **User Management** area of the Management Console, in the **Other rights** tab of the user or group **Properties**.

### 7.7.1 Reports for addresses

The following reports are available for addresses with the Project module.

- External services (page 131)
- Expenses (page 132)
- Time records (page 133)

## Note

The default link mode for all address reports is **Overall dossier**. In addition to directly linked records, all records linked to the same company or one of its contacts will also be displayed. You may change this setting (see "7.7.5 Editing reports" on page 141).

## External services

The screenshot shows the 'External services' application window. At the top, there are navigation buttons for 'View', 'Configuration', 'List', 'Export', and 'Report'. Below this is a 'Filter' section with dropdowns for 'Net costs (Sum)', 'Turnover (Sum)', 'Date (Years)', and 'Date (Months)'. The main table displays data for 'NOMOSYS' and its sub-projects, including 'Software development for NOMOSYS' and '2.5 Installation'. The table has columns for 'Net costs (Sum)' and 'Turnover (Sum)' for both 'February' and 'Total 2019'. Below the table, there are tabs for 'Addresses', 'External services', 'Documents', 'Addresses', 'Primary address', 'Primary project', 'Primary job', and 'Report data'. A search bar and action buttons are also visible.

	February		Total 2019	
	Net costs (Sum)	Turnover (Sum)	Net costs (Sum)	Turnover (Sum)
NOMOSYS	6,150.00	6,150.00	6,150.00	6,150.00
Software development for NOMOSYS	6,150.00	6,150.00	6,150.00	6,150.00
2.5 Installation	6,150.00	6,150.00	6,150.00	6,150.00
External costs	2,500.00	2,500.00	2,500.00	2,500.00
Material costs	3,650.00	3,650.00	3,650.00	3,650.00

Date	Receipt number	Subject	Participants	Type	Net costs	VAT rate	Gross costs	Turnover
2/18/2019	78312617	Hardware installation	All (public)	External costs	2,500.00	20.00	3,000.00	2,500.00
2/18/2019	78312612	Hardware shipment	All (public)	Material costs	3,650.00	20.00	4,380.00	3,650.00

- **Display fields:** Net costs, Turnover
- **Grouping row:** Address, Project, Job, Type
- **Grouping column:** Date (Years), Date (Months)
- **Crystal Reports design:** List with sub-totals for the address and the project

The screenshot shows the 'External services' application window in 'Report' mode. The main report area displays a Crystal Reports design view for 'NOMOSYS - Software development for NOMOSYS'. The report includes a table with columns for 'Date', 'Receipt number', 'Subject', 'Type', 'Cost unit', 'Net costs', '%', 'Gross costs', and 'Turnover'. The data is grouped by 'Date' and 'Subject'. Sub-totals are provided for 'Sum Project' and 'Sum Address'.

Date	Receipt number	Subject	Type	Cost unit	Net costs	%	Gross costs	Turnover
2/18/2019	78312612	Hardware shipment	Material costs	s.i.g. Computer, Mr. Timothy Goldstein	3,650.00 GBP	20%	4,380.00 GBP	3,650.00 GBP
2/18/2019	78312617	Hardware installation	External costs	s.i.g. Computer, Mr. Timothy Goldstein	2,500.00 GBP	20%	3,000.00 GBP	2,500.00 GBP
<b>Sum Project:</b>					<b>6,150.00 GBP</b>		<b>7,380.00 GBP</b>	<b>6,150.00 GBP</b>
<b>Sum Address:</b>					<b>6,150.00 GBP</b>		<b>7,380.00 GBP</b>	<b>6,150.00 GBP</b>

Current Page No.: 1 | Total Page No.: 1 | Zoom Factor: 100%

## Expenses

The screenshot shows the SAP Expenses application. At the top, there are navigation buttons for View, Configuration, List, Export, and Report. Below this is a filter section with dropdowns for Net costs (Sum), Turnover (Sum), Start (Years), and Start (Months). The main table displays data for 2019, broken down by month (January and February) and a Total 2019 column. The table has columns for Net costs (Sum) and Turnover (Sum) for each month and the total. Below the summary table, there are tabs for Addresses, Expenses, Primary address, Primary project, Primary job, and Report data. The Expenses tab is active, showing a search bar for Subject and a list of actions like Short notes, Send, Link with, New link, and Report... Below this is a note: "To group the column headers, drag them to this area." The main table below has columns for Start, User, Subject, Type, Net costs, VAT rate, Gross costs, and Turnover. It lists several expense entries with their respective dates, users, subjects, and costs.

2019		February		Total 2019	
January	February	Net costs (Sum)	Turnover (Sum)	Net costs (Sum)	Turnover (Sum)
106.42	168.86	106.42	168.86	275.28	275.28
106.42	168.86	106.42	168.86	275.28	275.28
106.42	0.00	106.42	0.00	106.42	106.42
0.00	168.86	0.00	168.86	168.86	168.86

Start	User	Subject	Type	Net costs	VAT rate	Gross costs	Turnover
2/18/2019 6:00:00 AM	Robert Glade	Per diem to Appointment User training	Per diem	20.00		20.00	20.00
2/18/2019 12:00:00 AM	Robert Glade	Travel costs to Appointment User training	Travel costs	3.00		3.00	3.00
2/18/2019 12:00:00 AM	Michael Green	Hotel to Appointment User training	Hotel	63.03	20.00	75.63	63.03
2/18/2019 12:00:00 AM	Michael Green	Rail to Appointment User training	Rail	79.83	20.00	95.80	79.83

- **Display fields:** Net costs, Turnover
- **Grouping row:** Address, Project, Job, Type, User
- **Grouping column:** Start (Years), Start (Months)
- **Crystal Reports design:** Bill of expenses for customers

The screenshot shows the SAP Crystal Reports interface. The report title is "Software development for NOMOSYS". Below the title, it lists the person responsible as Peter Grayhound and the contact as Dr Michael Green. The report contains a list of expense entries with their dates, descriptions, and costs in GBP. The entries are grouped by the person responsible. The report also shows the current page number (1), total page number (1), and zoom factor (100%).

Date	Description	Cost (GBP)
1/30/2019	Travel costs to Appointment Installation Verdant Lane164, SE1 9RT London, United Kingdom - NOMOSYS, 123 Jermyn Street, London	3.00
1/30/2019	Per diem to Appointment Installation	10.00
2/18/2019	Hotel to Appointment User training	63.03
2/18/2019	Rail to Appointment User training	79.83
1/30/2019	Travel costs to Appointment Installation Verdant Lane164, SE1 9RT London, United Kingdom - NOMOSYS, 123 Jermyn Street, London	3.00

## Time records

The screenshot shows the 'Time records' application window. At the top, there are navigation icons and a menu bar with options like 'View', 'Configuration', 'List', 'Export', 'Report', and 'Billing'. Below the menu is a 'Filter' section with various dropdowns for 'Actual', 'Charg', 'Actual c', 'Actual tur', 'Start (Years)', and 'Start (Months)'. A tree view on the left shows a hierarchy starting with 'NOMOSYS' and sub-items like 'Software development for NOMOSYS', '2.1 Conception', '2.2 Development', '2.3 Test', '2.5 Installation', and '4 Project management'. To the right of the tree is a table with columns: 'Actual (Sum)', 'Charged (Sum)', 'Actual costs (Sum)', and 'Actual turnover (Sum)'. Below the tree and table is a section for 'Addresses' with tabs for 'Time records', 'Primary address', 'Primary project', 'Primary job', and 'Report data'. There is a search bar for 'Subject' and a list of actions like 'Short notes', 'Send', 'Link with', 'New link', and 'Report...'. At the bottom, there is a detailed table with columns: 'User', 'Subject', 'Type', 'Start', 'End', 'Actual', and 'Charged'.

Actual (Sum)	Charged (Sum)	Actual costs (Sum)	Actual turnover (Sum)
19 PD, 2 HR, 56 mins	17 PD, 4 HR, 40 mins	8,066.67	27,433.33
19 PD, 2 HR, 56 mins	17 PD, 4 HR, 40 mins	8,066.67	27,433.33
4 PD, 7 HR, 46 mins	4 PD, 7 HR, 46 mins	1,988.33	7,953.33
4 PD, 6 HR, 54 mins	4 PD, 6 HR, 54 mins	1,945.00	7,780.00
4 PD, 6 HR, 16 mins	4 PD, 0 HR, 00 mins	1,913.33	6,400.00
1 PD, 2 HR, 00 mins	1 PD, 2 HR, 00 mins	500.00	1,300.00
3 PD, 4 HR, 00 mins	2 PD, 4 HR, 00 mins	1,720.00	4,000.00

User	Subject	Type	Start	End	Actual	Charged
Peter Grayhound	Travel time	Travel time	1/30/2019 5:00:00 PM	1/30/2019 6:00:00 PM	1 HR, 00 mins	1 HR, 00 mins
Peter Grayhound	NOMOSYS installation	Service	1/30/2019 1:00:00 PM	1/30/2019 5:00:00 PM	4 HR, 00 mins	4 HR, 00 mins
Peter Grayhound	NOMOSYS installation	Service	1/30/2019 8:00:00 AM	1/30/2019 12:00:00 PM	4 HR, 00 mins	4 HR, 00 mins
Peter Grayhound	Travel time	Travel time	1/30/2019 7:00:00 AM	1/30/2019 8:00:00 AM	1 HR, 00 mins	1 HR, 00 mins

- **Other rights:** Time record: analysis
- **Display fields:** Actual, Charged, Actual costs, Actual turnover
- **Grouping row:** Address, Project, Job, User, Type
- **Grouping column:** Start (Years), Start (Months)
- **Crystal Reports design:** Work report

The screenshot shows the 'Time records' application window with the 'Report' button highlighted. Below the application window is a screenshot of a Crystal Reports design view. The report title is 'Software development for NOMOSYS'. It shows a summary of customer and person responsible information, followed by a table of charge rates for project members.

Customer	NOMOSYS
Person responsible	Peter Grayhound

Charge rates of project members	Per day	Per hour
<b>Antonio Matarazzo</b>		
Programming	1,600.00	200.00
<b>Dr Michael Green</b>		
Conception	1,600.00	200.00
<b>Peter Grayhound</b>		
Project management	1,600.00	200.00
Service	1,200.00	150.00
Travel time	400.00	50.00

Current Page No.: 1      Total Page No.: 7      Zoom Factor: 100%

## 7.7.2 Reports for projects

The following reports are available for projects with the Project module.

- Compare nominal/actual (page 134)
- External services (page 136)
- Expenses (page 137)
- Time records (page 138)
- Resource planning (page 139)

### Compare nominal/actual

Result	Total estimate (Sum)	ETC (Sum)	Actual (Sum)
NOMOSYS	42 PD, 1 HR, 30 mins	22 PD, 0 HR, 04 mins	20 PD, 1 HR, 26 mins
Software development for NOMOSYS	42 PD, 1 HR, 30 mins	22 PD, 0 HR, 04 mins	20 PD, 1 HR, 26 mins
> 2.1 Conception	5 PD, 0 HR, 00 mins	0 HR, 14 mins	4 PD, 7 HR, 46 mins
> 2.2 Development	5 PD, 0 HR, 00 mins	1 HR, 06 mins	4 PD, 6 HR, 54 mins
> 2.3 Test	5 PD, 0 HR, 00 mins	1 HR, 44 mins	4 PD, 6 HR, 16 mins
> 2.5 Installation	2 PD, 0 HR, 00 mins	4 HR, 00 mins	1 PD, 4 HR, 00 mins
> 2.6 Training	10 PD, 0 HR, 00 mins	10 PD, 0 HR, 00 mins	0 HR, 00 mins
> 3 Documentation	5 PD, 0 HR, 00 mins	5 PD, 0 HR, 00 mins	0 HR, 00 mins
> 4 Project management	10 PD, 1 HR, 30 mins	6 PD, 1 HR, 00 mins	4 PD, 0 HR, 30 mins

Subject	User	Time budget	Actual	ETC	% used	Charged
Software development for NOMOSYS   2.1 Conception	Michael Green	5 PD, 0 HR, 00 mins	4 PD, 7 HR, 46 mins	0 HR, 14 mins	99.42	4 PD, 7 HR, 46 mins
Software development for NOMOSYS   2.2 Development	Antonio Matarazzo	5 PD, 0 HR, 00 mins	4 PD, 6 HR, 54 mins	1 HR, 06 mins	97.25	4 PD, 6 HR, 54 mins
Software development for NOMOSYS   2.3 Test	Antonio Matarazzo	5 PD, 0 HR, 00 mins	4 PD, 6 HR, 16 mins	1 HR, 44 mins	95.67	4 PD, 0 HR, 00 mins
Software development for NOMOSYS   2.5 Installation	Peter Grayhound	2 PD, 0 HR, 00 mins	1 PD, 4 HR, 00 mins	4 HR, 00 mins	75.00	1 PD, 4 HR, 00 mins
Software development for NOMOSYS   2.6 Training	Peter Grayhound	8 PD, 0 HR, 00 mins	0 HR, 00 mins	8 PD, 0 HR, 00 mins	0.00	0 HR, 00 mins
Software development for NOMOSYS   2.6 Training	Training room	2 PD, 0 HR, 00 mins	0 HR, 00 mins	2 PD, 0 HR, 00 mins	0.00	0 HR, 00 mins
Software development for NOMOSYS   3 Documentation	Robert Glade	5 PD, 0 HR, 00 mins	0 HR, 00 mins	5 PD, 0 HR, 00 mins	0.00	0 HR, 00 mins
Software development for NOMOSYS   4 Project management	Peter Grayhound	5 PD, 0 HR, 00 mins	1 PD, 5 HR, 30 mins	3 PD, 4 HR, 00 mins	33.75	5 HR, 30 mins
Software development for NOMOSYS   4 Project management	Robert Glade	5 PD, 0 HR, 00 mins	2 PD, 3 HR, 00 mins	2 PD, 5 HR, 00 mins	47.50	2 PD, 1 HR, 30 mins

- **Other rights:** Resource planning, Time record: analysis
- **Display fields:** Total estimate, ETC, Actual (from resource plans)
- **Grouping row:** Address, Project, Job, User
- **Grouping column:** (None)
- **Crystal Reports design:** Work report

Compare nominal/actual

View Configuration List Export Report Billing

SAP CRYSTAL REPORTS®

Main Report

### Software development for NOMOSYS

Customer		NOMOSYS	
Person responsible		Peter Grayhound	

Charge rates of project members	Per day	Per hour
<b>Antonio Matarazzo</b>		
Programming	1,600.00	200.00
<b>Dr Michael Green</b>		
Conception	1,600.00	200.00
<b>Peter Grayhound</b>		
Project management	1,600.00	200.00
Service	1,200.00	150.00
Travel time	400.00	50.00
<b>Robert Glade</b>		
Project management	1,600.00	200.00

Overview about costs in Euro	1 PD = 8.00 hrs	days	Daily rate	Sum
<b>Conception</b>	4 PD, 7 hrs, 46 min	4.97	1,600.00	<b>7,953.33</b>
<b>Programming</b>	8 PD, 6 hrs, 54 min	8.86	1,600.00	<b>14,180.00</b>
<b>Project management</b>	2 PD, 7 hrs, 00 min	2.88	1,600.00	<b>4,600.00</b>
<b>Service</b>	1 PD, 0 hrs, 00 min	1.00	1,200.00	<b>1,200.00</b>
<b>Travel time</b>	2 hrs, 00 min	0.25	400.00	<b>100.00</b>
<b>Total</b>				<b>28,033.33</b>

Current Page No.: 1      Total Page No.: 7      Zoom Factor: 100%

## External services

The screenshot shows the SAP External services list view. At the top, there are navigation buttons for View, Configuration, List, Export, and Report. Below is a filter section with dropdowns for Net costs (Sum), Turnover (Sum), Date (Years), and Date (Months). The main area displays a tree structure for NOMOSYS, with sub-items for Software development, Installation, External costs, and Material costs. A table below the tree shows the data for these items, including Net costs and Turnover for February and Total 2019.

	Net costs (Sum)	Turnover (Sum)	Net costs (Sum)	Turnover (Sum)
NOMOSYS	6,150.00	6,150.00	6,150.00	6,150.00
Software development for NOMOSYS	6,150.00	6,150.00	6,150.00	6,150.00
2.5 Installation	6,150.00	6,150.00	6,150.00	6,150.00
External costs	2,500.00	2,500.00	2,500.00	2,500.00
Material costs	3,650.00	3,650.00	3,650.00	3,650.00

Below the tree, there are tabs for Addresses, External services, Documents, and a table with columns: Primary address, Primary project, Primary job, and Report data. A search bar and action menu are also visible.

Date	Receipt number	Subject	Participants	Type	Net costs	VAT rate	Gross costs	Turnover
2/18/2019	78312617	Hardware installation	All (public)	External costs	2,500.00	20.00	3,000.00	2,500.00
2/18/2019	78312612	Hardware shipment	All (public)	Material costs	3,650.00	20.00	4,380.00	3,650.00

- **Display fields:** Net costs, Turnover
- **Grouping row:** Address, Project, Job, Type
- **Grouping column:** Date (Years), Date (Months)
- **Crystal Reports design:** List with sub-totals for the address and the project

The screenshot shows the SAP Crystal Reports design view for the External services data. The report is titled "NOMOSYS - Software development for NOMOSYS". It displays a table with columns for Date, Receipt number, Subject, Type, Cost unit, Net costs, %, Gross costs, and Turnover. The data is grouped by Date and Subject. Sub-totals are provided for the Project and Address levels.

Date	Receipt number	Subject	Type	Cost unit	Net costs	%	Gross costs	Turnover
2/18/2019	78312612	Hardware shipment	Material costs	s.i.g. Computer, Mr. Timothy Goldstein	3,650.00 GBP	20%	4,380.00 GBP	3,650.00 GBP
2/18/2019	78312617	Hardware installation	External costs	s.i.g. Computer, Mr. Timothy Goldstein	2,500.00 GBP	20%	3,000.00 GBP	2,500.00 GBP
<b>Sum Project:</b>					<b>6,150.00 GBP</b>		<b>7,380.00 GBP</b>	<b>6,150.00 GBP</b>
<b>Sum Address:</b>					<b>6,150.00 GBP</b>		<b>7,380.00 GBP</b>	<b>6,150.00 GBP</b>

At the bottom, there are status bars for Current Page No.: 1, Total Page No.: 1, and Zoom Factor: 100%.

## Expenses

The screenshot shows the SAP Expenses application. At the top, there are navigation icons for View, Configuration, List, Export, and Report. Below this is a filter section with dropdowns for Net costs (Sum), Turnover (Sum), Start (Years), and Start (Months). The main table displays data for 2019, broken down by month (January and February) and a Total 2019 column. The table has columns for Net costs (Sum) and Turnover (Sum) for each month and total. The data is grouped by project (NOMOSYS) and further by sub-project (Software development for NOMOSYS, 2.5 Installation, 2.6 Training). Below the summary table, there are tabs for Addresses, Expenses, Primary address, Primary project, Primary job, and Report data. The Expenses tab is active, showing a search bar for Subject and a list of actions like Short notes, Send, Link with, New link, and Report... Below this is a note: "To group the column headers, drag them to this area." The main table below has columns for Start, User, Subject, Type, Net costs, VAT rate, Gross costs, and Turnover. It lists several expense entries with their respective dates, users, subjects, and costs.

2019		Total 2019					
January	February	Net costs (Sum)	Turnover (Sum)				
Net costs (Sum)	Turnover (Sum)	Net costs (Sum)	Turnover (Sum)				
NOMOSYS		106.42	106.42	168.86	168.86	275.28	275.28
Software development for NOMOSYS		106.42	106.42	168.86	168.86	275.28	275.28
> 2.5 Installation		106.42	106.42	0.00	0.00	106.42	106.42
> 2.6 Training		0.00	0.00	168.86	168.86	168.86	168.86

Start	User	Subject	Type	Net costs	VAT rate	Gross costs	Turnover
2/18/2019 6:00:00 AM	Robert Glade	Per diem to Appointment User training	Per diem	20.00		20.00	20.00
2/18/2019 12:00:00 AM	Robert Glade	Travel costs to Appointment User training	Travel costs	3.00		3.00	3.00
2/18/2019 12:00:00 AM	Michael Green	Hotel to Appointment User training	Hotel	63.03	20.00	75.63	63.03
2/18/2019 12:00:00 AM	Michael Green	Rail to Appointment User training	Rail	79.83	20.00	95.80	79.83

- **Display fields:** Net costs, Turnover
- **Grouping row:** Address, Project, Job, Type, User
- **Grouping column:** Start (Years), Start (Months)
- **Crystal Reports design:** Bill of expenses for customers

The screenshot shows the SAP Crystal Reports interface. The report title is "Software development for NOMOSYS". Below the title, it lists the person responsible (Peter Grayhound) and the contact (Dr Michael Green). The report contains a list of expense entries with their dates, descriptions, and costs in GBP. The entries are grouped by user (Dr Michael Green and Mr Antonio Matarazzo). The report footer shows "Current Page No.: 1", "Total Page No.: 1", and "Zoom Factor: 100%".

Date	Description	Cost (GBP)
1/30/2019	Travel costs to Appointment Installation Verdant Lane164, SE1 9RT London, United Kingdom - NOMOSYS, 123 Jermyn Street, London	3.00
1/30/2019	Per diem to Appointment Installation	10.00
2/18/2019	Hotel to Appointment User training	63.03
2/18/2019	Rail to Appointment User training	79.83
1/30/2019	Travel costs to Appointment Installation Verdant Lane164, SE1 9RT London, United Kingdom - NOMOSYS, 123 Jermyn Street, London	3.00

## Time records

The screenshot shows the 'Time records' application window. At the top, there is a toolbar with icons for View, Configuration, List, Export, Report, and Billing. Below the toolbar is a 'Filter' section with dropdown menus for 'Actual', 'Charg', 'Actual c', 'Actual tur', 'Start (Years)', and 'Start (Months)'. A tree view on the left shows a hierarchy starting with 'NOMOSYS', followed by 'Software development for NOMOSYS', and then sub-items like '2.1 Conception', '2.2 Development', '2.3 Test', '2.5 Installation', and '4 Project management'. To the right of the tree is a summary table with columns: 'Actual (Sum)', 'Charged (Sum)', 'Actual costs (Sum)', and 'Actual turnover (Sum)'. Below the tree and table is a section for 'Addresses' with tabs for 'Time records', 'Primary address', 'Primary project', 'Primary job', and 'Report data'. There is a search bar for 'Subject' and an 'Action' menu with options like 'Short notes', 'Send', 'Link with', 'New link', and 'Report...'. At the bottom, there is a table with columns: 'User', 'Subject', 'Type', 'Start', 'End', 'Actual', and 'Charged'.

Actual (Sum)	Charged (Sum)	Actual costs (Sum)	Actual turnover (Sum)
19 PD, 2 HR, 56 mins	17 PD, 4 HR, 40 mins	8,066.67	27,433.33
19 PD, 2 HR, 56 mins	17 PD, 4 HR, 40 mins	8,066.67	27,433.33
4 PD, 7 HR, 46 mins	4 PD, 7 HR, 46 mins	1,988.33	7,953.33
4 PD, 6 HR, 54 mins	4 PD, 6 HR, 54 mins	1,945.00	7,780.00
4 PD, 6 HR, 16 mins	4 PD, 0 HR, 00 mins	1,913.33	6,400.00
1 PD, 2 HR, 00 mins	1 PD, 2 HR, 00 mins	500.00	1,300.00
3 PD, 4 HR, 00 mins	2 PD, 4 HR, 00 mins	1,720.00	4,000.00

User	Subject	Type	Start	End	Actual	Charged
Peter Grayhound	Travel time	Travel time	1/30/2019 5:00:00 PM	1/30/2019 6:00:00 PM	1 HR, 00 mins	1 HR, 00 mins
Peter Grayhound	NOMOSYS installation	Service	1/30/2019 1:00:00 PM	1/30/2019 5:00:00 PM	4 HR, 00 mins	4 HR, 00 mins
Peter Grayhound	NOMOSYS installation	Service	1/30/2019 8:00:00 AM	1/30/2019 12:00:00 PM	4 HR, 00 mins	4 HR, 00 mins
Peter Grayhound	Travel time	Travel time	1/30/2019 7:00:00 AM	1/30/2019 8:00:00 AM	1 HR, 00 mins	1 HR, 00 mins

- **Other rights:** Time record: analysis
- **Display fields:** Actual, Charged, Actual costs, Actual turnover
- **Grouping row:** Address, Project, Job, User, Type
- **Grouping column:** Start (Years), Start (Months)
- **Crystal Reports design:** Work report

The screenshot shows the 'Time records' application window with the 'Report' button highlighted. Below the application window is a Crystal Reports design for 'Software development for NOMOSYS'. The report header shows 'Customer: NOMOSYS' and 'Person responsible: Peter Grayhound'. The main body of the report is a table titled 'Charge rates of project members' with columns 'Per day' and 'Per hour'. The table lists members and their activities with corresponding charge rates.

Member	Activity	Per day	Per hour
<b>Antonio Matarazzo</b>	Programming	1,600.00	200.00
<b>Dr Michael Green</b>	Conception	1,600.00	200.00
<b>Peter Grayhound</b>	Project management	1,600.00	200.00
	Service	1,200.00	150.00
	Travel time	400.00	50.00

Current Page No.: 1      Total Page No.: 7      Zoom Factor: 100%

## Resource planning

The screenshot shows the SAP Resource Planning interface. At the top, there are navigation buttons for View, Configuration, List, Export, and Report. Below that is a filter section with options for Actua, ETC, Start (Years), Start (Months), and Start (Weeks). The main area displays a summary table for 2019, broken down by month (January, February, March) and a Total 2019 row. The summary table shows Actual (Sum) and ETC (Sum) for various resources like Antonio Matarazzo, Michael Green, Peter Grayhound, Robert Glade, and Training room. Below the summary table is a section for Projects, Resource plans, Primary address, Primary project, Primary job, and Report data. A search bar and action menu are present. The bottom part of the screenshot shows a detailed resource plan table with columns for Subject, User, Time budget, Actual, ETC, % used, Charged, and Time budget remaining.

Subject	Actual (Sum)	ETC (Sum)	Actual (Sum)	ETC (Sum)	Actual (Sum)	ETC (Sum)	Actual (Sum)	ETC (Sum)
> Antonio Matarazzo	0 HR, 00 mins	0 HR, 00 mins	9 PD, 5 HR, 10 mins	2 HR, 50 mins	0 HR, 00 mins	0 HR, 00 mins	9 PD, 5 HR, 10 mins	2 HR, 50 mins
> Michael Green	4 PD, 7 HR, 46 mins	0 HR, 14 mins	0 HR, 00 mins	0 HR, 00 mins	0 HR, 00 mins	0 HR, 00 mins	4 PD, 7 HR, 46 mins	0 HR, 14 mins
> Peter Grayhound	0 HR, 00 mins	0 HR, 00 mins	1 PD, 4 HR, 00 mins	4 HR, 00 mins	1 PD, 5 HR, 30 mins	11 PD, 4 HR, 00 mins	3 PD, 1 HR, 30 mins	12 PD, 0 HR, 00 mins
> Robert Glade	0 HR, 00 mins	0 HR, 00 mins	0 HR, 00 mins	0 HR, 00 mins	2 PD, 3 HR, 00 mins	7 PD, 5 HR, 00 mins	2 PD, 3 HR, 00 mins	7 PD, 5 HR, 00 mins
> Training room	0 HR, 00 mins	0 HR, 00 mins	0 HR, 00 mins	0 HR, 00 mins	0 HR, 00 mins	2 PD, 0 HR, 00 mins	0 HR, 00 mins	2 PD, 0 HR, 00 mins
Result	4 PD, 7 HR, 46 mins	0 HR, 14 mins	11 PD, 1 HR, 10 mins	6 HR, 50 mins	4 PD, 0 HR, 30 mins	21 PD, 1 HR, 00 mins	20 PD, 1 HR, 26 mins	22 PD, 0 HR, 04 mins

Subject	User	Time budget	Actual	ETC	% used	Charged	Time budget remaining
Software development for NOMOSYS   2.1 Conception	Michael Green	5 PD, 0 HR, 00 mins	4 PD, 7 HR, 46 mins	0 HR, 14 mins	99.42	4 PD, 7 HR, 46 mins	0 HR, 14 mins
Software development for NOMOSYS   2.2 Development	Antonio Matarazzo	5 PD, 0 HR, 00 mins	4 PD, 6 HR, 54 mins	1 HR, 06 mins	97.25	4 PD, 6 HR, 54 mins	1 HR, 06 mins
Software development for NOMOSYS   2.3 Test	Antonio Matarazzo	5 PD, 0 HR, 00 mins	4 PD, 6 HR, 16 mins	1 HR, 44 mins	95.67	4 PD, 0 HR, 00 mins	1 PD, 0 HR, 00 mins
Software development for NOMOSYS   2.5 Installation	Peter Grayhound	2 PD, 0 HR, 00 mins	1 PD, 4 HR, 00 mins	4 HR, 00 mins	75.00	1 PD, 4 HR, 00 mins	4 HR, 00 mins
Software development for NOMOSYS   2.6 Training	Peter Grayhound	8 PD, 0 HR, 00 mins	0 HR, 00 mins	8 PD, 0 HR, 00 mins	0.00	0 HR, 00 mins	8 PD, 0 HR, 00 mins
Software development for NOMOSYS   2.6 Training	Training room	2 PD, 0 HR, 00 mins	0 HR, 00 mins	2 PD, 0 HR, 00 mins	0.00	0 HR, 00 mins	2 PD, 0 HR, 00 mins
Software development for NOMOSYS   3 Documentation	Robert Glade	5 PD, 0 HR, 00 mins	0 HR, 00 mins	5 PD, 0 HR, 00 mins	0.00	0 HR, 00 mins	5 PD, 0 HR, 00 mins
Software development for NOMOSYS   4 Project management	Peter Grayhound	5 PD, 0 HR, 00 mins	1 PD, 5 HR, 30 mins	3 PD, 4 HR, 00 mins	33.75	5 HR, 30 mins	4 PD, 2 HR, 30 mins
Software development for NOMOSYS   4 Project management	Robert Glade	5 PD, 0 HR, 00 mins	2 PD, 3 HR, 00 mins	2 PD, 5 HR, 00 mins	47.50	2 PD, 1 HR, 30 mins	2 PD, 6 HR, 30 mins

- **Other rights:** Resource planning
- **Display fields:** Actual, ETC (from resource plans)
- **Grouping row:** User, Project, Job
- **Grouping column:** Start (Years), Start (Months), Start (Weeks)
- **Crystal Reports design:** Sortable list

The screenshot shows the SAP Crystal Reports interface. The main report area displays a detailed resource plan table with columns for Start, End, Actual, ETC, User, and Subject. The table shows the start and end dates for each resource plan entry, along with the actual and ETC values, the user assigned, and the subject of the project.

Start	End	Actual	ETC	User	Subject
1/14/2019	1/19/2019	4 PD, 7 hrs, 46 min	0 hrs, 14 min	Michael Green	Software development for NOMOSYS   2.1 Conception
1/14/2019	3/2/2019	0 hrs, 00 min	5 PD, 0 hrs, 00 min	Robert Glade	Software development for NOMOSYS   3 Documentation
1/14/2019	3/2/2019	1 PD, 5 hrs, 30 min	3 PD, 4 hrs, 00 min	Peter Grayhound	Software development for NOMOSYS   4 Project management
1/14/2019	3/2/2019	2 PD, 3 hrs, 00 min	2 PD, 5 hrs, 00 min	Robert Glade	Software development for NOMOSYS   4 Project management
1/21/2019	2/2/2019	4 PD, 6 hrs, 54 min	1 hrs, 06 min	Antonio Matarazzo	Software development for NOMOSYS   2.2 Development
2/4/2019	2/9/2019	4 PD, 6 hrs, 16 min	1 hrs, 44 min	Antonio Matarazzo	Software development for NOMOSYS   2.3 Test
2/11/2019	2/16/2019	1 PD, 4 hrs, 00 min	4 hrs, 00 min	Peter Grayhound	Software development for NOMOSYS   2.5 Installation
2/18/2019	3/2/2019	0 hrs, 00 min	2 PD, 0 hrs, 00 min	Training room	Software development for NOMOSYS   2.6 Training
2/18/2019	3/2/2019	0 hrs, 00 min	8 PD, 0 hrs, 00 min	Peter Grayhound	Software development for NOMOSYS   2.6 Training

Current Page No: 1 | Total Page No: 1 | Zoom Factor: 100%

### 7.7.3 Time record report for jobs

With the Project module and the other right **Time record: analysis**, the **Time records** report is available for jobs.

#### Time records

The screenshot shows the SAP Time records interface. At the top, there are navigation buttons: View, Configuration, List, Export, Report, and Billing. Below this is a filter section with dropdowns for Actual, Charged, Actual costs, and Actual turnover, and date pickers for Start (Years) and Start (Months). The main table displays a summary of records for 2019, grouped by project (NOMOSYS) and job (Software development for NOMOSYS, 2.2 Development). The table columns are Actual (Sum), Charged (Sum), Actual costs (Sum), and Actual turnover (Sum). Below the summary, there are tabs for Jobs, Time records, Primary address, Primary project, Primary job, and Report data. A search bar and action menu are also visible. The detailed table below shows individual records with columns for User, Subject, Type, Start, End, Actual, and Charged.

Actual (Sum)	Charged (Sum)	Actual costs (Sum)	Actual turnover (Sum)
4 PD, 6 HR, 54 mins	4 PD, 6 HR, 54 mins	1,945.00	7,780.00
4 PD, 6 HR, 54 mins	4 PD, 6 HR, 54 mins	1,945.00	7,780.00
4 PD, 6 HR, 54 mins	4 PD, 6 HR, 54 mins	1,945.00	7,780.00

User	Subject	Type	Start	End	Actual	Charged
Antonio Matarazzo	CP-3.1 for NOMOSYS	Programming	1/28/2019 1:37:00 PM	1/28/2019 4:40:00 PM	3 HR, 03 mins	3 HR, 03 mins
Antonio Matarazzo	CP-3.1 for NOMOSYS	Programming	1/28/2019 8:36:00 AM	1/28/2019 12:36:00 PM	4 HR, 00 mins	4 HR, 00 mins
Antonio Matarazzo	CP-3.1 for NOMOSYS	Programming	1/25/2019 3:33:00 PM	1/25/2019 6:12:00 PM	2 HR, 39 mins	2 HR, 39 mins

- **Other rights:** Time record: analysis
- **Display fields:** Actual, Charged, Actual costs, Actual turnover
- **Grouping row:** Address, Project, Job, User, Type
- **Grouping column:** Start (Years), Start (Months)
- **Crystal Reports design:** Work report

The screenshot shows the SAP Crystal Reports design view for the Time records report. The report title is "Software development for NOMOSYS". The customer is NOMOSYS, and the person responsible is Peter Grayhound. The report displays charge rates of project members for Antonio Matarazzo, showing a daily rate of 1,600.00 and a per-hour rate of 200.00. An overview about costs in Euro shows a total of 7,780.00 for programming, with a daily rate of 1,600.00 and a sum of 7,780.00. The report is displayed in a design view with a toolbar and navigation controls.

Charge rates of project members	Per day	Per hour
<b>Antonio Matarazzo</b>		
Programming	1,600.00	200.00

Overview about costs in Euro	1 PD = 8.00 hrs	days	Daily rate	Sum
<b>Programming</b>	4 PD, 6 hrs, 54 min	4.86	1,600.00	<b>7,780.00</b>
<b>Total</b>				<b>7,780.00</b>

## 7.7.4 Working with reports

In the table view, you may access nearly all features for processing your data that are available with a Manager license for the Report module, such as:

- Filter via the arrow down button on the associated field
- Add and remove display values; change the calculation function (Sum, Minimum, Maximum, Average) via the associated context menu
- Add and remove grouping fields; regroup via drag-and-drop of fields
- Change the sort order via the context menu for a grouping field (by group name or by display value)
- Display as bar, area, pie or line diagram
- Prepare for billing, billing and vendor credit notes (see "7.8 Billing in reports (Desktop Client only)" on page 143).
- Export to Microsoft Excel or Microsoft Access, as an xml or html file
- Create a report with Crystal Reports

The screenshot shows the 'Time records' application window. At the top, there is a menu bar with options like View, Configuration, List, Export, Report, and Billing. Below the menu is a 'Filter' section with various dropdown menus for 'Actual', 'Charged', and 'Start'. A summary table is displayed with columns for 'Actual (Sum)', 'Charged (Sum)', 'Actual costs (Sum)', and 'Actual turnover (Sum)'. Below this is a 'Jobs' section with tabs for 'Time records', 'Primary address', 'Primary project', 'Primary job', and 'Report data'. A 'Subject' filter is present, and a 'Report...' button is visible. At the bottom, a detailed table shows individual records with columns for 'User', 'Subject', 'Type', 'Start', 'End', 'Actual', and 'Charged'.

Actual (Sum)	Charged (Sum)	Actual costs (Sum)	Actual turnover (Sum)
4 PD, 6 HR, 54 mins	4 PD, 6 HR, 54 mins	1,945.00	7,780.00
4 PD, 6 HR, 54 mins	4 PD, 6 HR, 54 mins	1,945.00	7,780.00
4 PD, 6 HR, 54 mins	4 PD, 6 HR, 54 mins	1,945.00	7,780.00

User	Subject	Type	Start	End	Actual	Charged
Antonio Matarazzo	CP-3.1 for NOMOSYS	Programming	1/28/2019 1:37:00 PM	1/28/2019 4:40:00 PM	3 HR, 03 mins	3 HR, 03 mins
Antonio Matarazzo	CP-3.1 for NOMOSYS	Programming	1/28/2019 8:36:00 AM	1/28/2019 12:36:00 PM	4 HR, 00 mins	4 HR, 00 mins
Antonio Matarazzo	CP-3.1 for NOMOSYS	Programming	1/25/2019 3:33:00 PM	1/25/2019 6:12:00 PM	2 HR, 39 mins	2 HR, 39 mins

You can find details about the available features in the user guide for the Report module. The user guide's current version is available for download under the following URL: <https://hilfe.cas.de/index-en.html>.

## 7.7.5 Editing reports

You can edit most settings for the reports listed here. While you can't add or remove data record types via link queries, the following settings are editable:

- Remove or add fields

- Reset **Overall dossier** mode to **Normal** for address reports in order to only display data records that have been linked directly.
- Select more data (e.g. **User data** tab for time records and expenses)
- Activate preparation for billing, vendor credit notes and billing features (**Billing** tab)
- Preselect display and grouping fields (**Visualization** tab)
- Select a Crystal Reports design
- Enter Crystal Report Viewer settings for exporting and archiving created reports as documents in CAS genesisWorld (**Crystal Reports** tab)

**Edit report template**

**Name** Time records

Participants All (public)

External access  private  confidential

**Notes** Edit Time stamp

**Data records** User data Time records Additional fields Billing Primary links Visualization Crystal Reports

**General**

Data record type: Addresses

Fields: Company, Company 2, Country, First name, Form of address, Name, Postal code, Street, Title, Town, Type, is Company

**Calculations**

Precalculated values

Calculated fields

**Options**

View format: Standard (public)

**Include links**

New Edit... Delete

Query: Time records Include: Additional links Link types: Primary link

Use Report visualization

Report visualization first  Crystal Reports first

Use Crystal Reports Design

Design: Work report Edit design... Select different design...

Save report template Cancel

You can find details about the available features in the user guide for the Report module. The user guide's current version is available for download under the following URL: <https://hilfe.cas.de/index-en.html>.

With a Report Manager license, you can duplicate the reports. The duplicates may then be edited freely, including adding or removing data record types via link queries.

## 7.8 Billing in reports (Desktop Client only)

In reports for time records, expenses or external services, you have access to the **Billing** menu if at least one of the associated features has been cleared in the report view's properties (see "7.8.1 Activating the billing features" on page 144).

With the Report module, you can activate the billing features in any report view for time records, expenses or external services.

The screenshot shows the Desktop Client interface for CAS genesisWorld (PM01). The main window displays a report titled "Billing: open". The report view includes a filter section with "Actual (Sum)" and "Charged (Sum)" columns. Below the filter is a table with columns for "Actual (Sum)" and "Charged (Sum)". The table lists time records for various users and projects, including Peter Grundmann, Robert Glaser, and Michael Green. The Billing menu is open, showing options such as "Prepare time records for billing", "Create items for expenses", "Create items for time records", "Add time records to item", "Create vendor credit", "Bill time records internally", and "Bill time records externally".

User	Subject	Type	Start	End	Actual	Charged
Peter Grundmann	Software customization	Conception	12/7/2018 10:00:00 AM	12/7/2018 12:00:00 PM	2 HR, 00 mins	1 HR, 43 mins
Peter Grayhound	Software customization	Conception	12/6/2018 1:00:00 PM	12/6/2018 5:00:00 PM	4 HR, 00 mins	4 HR, 00 mins
Robert Glade	Nomosys Jour Fixe	Conception	12/6/2018 10:01:52 AM	12/6/2018 11:31:52 AM	1 HR, 30 mins	1 HR, 30 mins
Michael Green	Nomosys Jour Fixe	Conception	12/6/2018 10:01:52 AM	12/6/2018 11:31:52 AM	1 HR, 30 mins	1 HR, 30 mins

The following section describes the features available in the **Billing** menu:

- 7.8.1 Activating the billing features (page 144)
- 7.8.2 Preparing time records for billing (page 146)
- 7.8.3 Creating items (page 147)
- 7.8.4 Billed data records in the item (page 150)
- 7.8.5 Adding time records to an item (page 151)
- 7.8.6 Item in billed data records (page 154)
- 7.8.7 Project invoicing (with Easy Invoice) (page 155)
- 7.8.8 Creating vendor credits (with Easy Invoice) (page 159)
- 7.8.9 Billing time records (page 163)

## 7.8.1 Activating the billing features

The **Billing** tab will be displayed when time records, expenses or external services are included in the analysis. Here you specify which features will be available in the **Billing** menu in the report view's toolbar and how exactly those features will operate.

If you don't activate any features of the **Billing** menu here, the menu will not be available in the report view.

The screenshot shows the 'View wizard' dialog box with the 'Report view' tab selected. The 'Billing' sub-tab is active, showing the following settings:

- Display buttons to prepare billing:**
  - Display button to prepare time records for billing
  - Display buttons to create items for external services, expenses and time records
    - Status for new items: [Dropdown menu]
    - Time records to be billed:  bill internally,  bill externally, Change status: <No change>
    - Expenses to be billed:  bill internally,  bill externally, Change status: <No change>
    - External services to be billed:  bill internally,  bill externally
  - Display the button to create vendor credits
  - Display button to internally bill time records
  - Display button to externally bill time records
- Use Report visualization
  - Report visualization first
  - Crystal Reports first
- Use Crystal Reports Design
  - Design: [Text box]
  - Edit design... [Button]
  - Select different design... [Button]

At the bottom, there are buttons for 'Cancel', '< Back', 'Next >', and 'Finish'.

- **Display button to prepare time records for billing:** With this setting and writing permissions for the time record fields **Charged** (externally billable working time) and **Actual turnover**, the **Prepare time records for billing** option will be available in the Billing menu.

Here you specify a total value for one of the **Charged** or **Actual turnover** fields for all time records selected in the view. Once you confirm, the specified total values will be distributed to the selected time records in the proportion of their respective **Actual** working time. If you have specified the **Actual turnover**, the applicable external hourly rates will be considered in the distribution.

This feature is described in greater detail in section "7.8.2 Preparing time records for billing" on page 146.

- **Display buttons to create items for external services, expenses and time records:** With this setting, the **Billing** menu will offer options to create items for time records,

expenses and external services. For each data record type selected in the report view, time records, expenses and external services, a separate option will be available in the **Billing** menu.

For time records, an additional option will be available for adding selected time records to an existing item.

When this setting is selected, you also select the status of the items to create. In addition, you specify per data record type whether the data records should be billed internally and/or externally and whether their status should change when items are created for them.

These features are described in greater detail in sections "7.8.3 Creating items" on page 147 and "7.8.5 Adding time records to an item" on page 151.

## Note for users of Easy Invoice

Do not bill time records, expenses and external services externally when you create items for them if you are using Easy Invoice and wish to create an invoice for those items later. You can only transfer items to an invoice if associated time records, expenses and external services are not billed externally. When you create a print document for an invoice, the data records will automatically be billed externally.

- **Display the button to create vendor credits:** With this setting, the **Create vendor credit** option will be available in the **Billing** menu in the report view (see "7.8.8 Creating vendor credits (with Easy Invoice)" on page 159).
- **Display button to internally bill time records:** With this setting, the **Bill time records internally** option will be available in the **Billing** menu in the report view.

Use this to internally bill the time records selected in the report view:

The **Actual** working time will be multiplied with the **internal hourly rate** valid for the time record's **Type** and **User** and stored in the **Actual costs** field with a precision of 4 decimals. Displayed values will be rounded to 2 decimals.

- **Display button to externally bill time records:** With this setting, the **Bill time records externally** option will be available in the **Billing** menu in the report view.

Use this to externally bill the time records selected in the report view:

The **Charged** working time will be multiplied with the **external hourly rate** valid for the time record's **Type** and **User** and stored in the **Actual turnover** field with a precision of 4 decimals. Displayed values will be rounded to 2 decimals.

## 7.8.2 Preparing time records for billing

Select time records that haven't been billed externally in the analysis table. Then select the **Prepare time records for billing** option in the **Billing** menu to enter a total value for the externally billable **Charged** working time or for the **Actual turnover**.

- If you enter a total for the **Charged** field, it will be distributed in the proportions of the **Actual** working times of the time records once you confirm. In the process, any entries that have already been made in the time records' **Charged** field will be overwritten.

Click on the green arrow to enter the **Actual** working time in the **Charged** field in all selected time records.

### Example

You are preparing two time records for billing. Actual working times of 1h und 3h sum up to 4h. As total for the **Charged** field, you enter 1 pd (i.e., 8h). According to the proportion of **Actual** working times, the time record with **Actual** = 1h will receive **Charged** = 2h. The time record with **Actual** = 3h will receive **Charged** = 6h.

- If you enter a total for the **Actual turnover**, it will be distributed in the proportions of the **Actual** working times of the individual time records, each multiplied with the **External hourly rate** valid for the time record's **User** and **Type**. The externally billable **Charged** working time results from its proportion of the total **Actual turnover**, divided by the **External hourly rate**.

If external hourly rates have been entered for a time record's primary address or project, they will be regarded here.

Only values that result from the multiplication of the **Charged** field with the respective **External hourly rate** can be assigned automatically. The **Charged** field's granularity, which you enter in the Management Console, in the **Time record** area, is regarded here.

For example, with a 1 minute granularity and an hourly rate of 60€, only full euro amounts are possible as **Actual turnover**.

## Example

You are preparing two time records for billing. **Actual** working times of 1h und 3h sum up to 4h. External hourly rates of 150€ for the time record with **Actual** = 1h and 50€ for the time record with **Actual** = 3h have been entered.

Each time record's proportion of the Actual turnover results from the **Actual** working time, multiplied with the valid **External hourly rate**. Therefore, each time record receives 150€ (1h \* 150€ and 3h \* 50€), corresponding to 50% of the **Actual turnover**.

You now enter 900€ as billable **Actual turnover**.

Corresponding to the distribution of the **Actual turnover**, each of both time records now receives 50% of the specified total of 900€ (i.e., 450€, respectively). Now if you divide each time record's **Actual turnover** by the valid **External hourly rate**, the time record with **Actual** = 1h will receive **Charged** = 3h (450€/150€) and the time record with **Actual** = 3h will receive **Charged** = 9h (450€/50€).

### 7.8.3 Creating items

Select time records, expenses or external services in the analysis table. Then select the respective option in the **Billing** menu to create items for the selected data records.

Time records with **Charged** and therefore **Actual turnover** 0 will be included, such that they will be listed in work reports. However, such time records won't affect the turnover.

Items for expenses or external services will only include data records with a **Turnover** greater than zero.

Creating items for time records...

Linked time records (3)

Charged: 4 PDs, 4 hrs, 42 mins

Actual turnover (EU): 4,772.59

Items (3)

Item type: One item for each hourly rate (days)

Date: 10/31/2018

Status: Acquisition

Product number: 10200020

Product: Conception

Description: The conception of customization services includes finalizing a service agreement and implementing the details of the agreed services as well as integrating the

Time records

Change status: <No change>

Buttons: Create, Create & Display, Cancel

When you create items for time records, you specify, under **Item type**, whether a shared item should be created for all time records that share the same primary project, or one item should be created per project and hourly rate.

If you distinguish by hourly rates, you also specify whether the working time is given in hours or (person) days.

When you create items for expenses or external services, a shared item will always be created for all data records that share the same primary project.

The current **Date** as well as the presetting for the **Status**, which you enter in the view's properties, will be adopted automatically. You may change both entries here. If you have selected data records with different project types, only their mutual status options will be available for selection here.

You must also specify a **Product** to link with the item. To do this, a history is available which you open by clicking on the little button with the arrow pointing down. When you enter a **Product** this way, the **Item type** which was last used for the selected product (lump sum, hourly rates or daily rates) will also be selected automatically.

Alternatively, you specify the desired item type in the product. You can find the associated selection in the **General** tab of the product. When you enter a product via the search, the item type specified in the product is automatically adopted (see "2.5 Products, prices and discounts" on page 35).

You will be informed whether the selected time records, expenses or external services will be billed internally or externally. For time records and expenses, the target status that was preconfigured in the view's properties will also be displayed and may be changed here.

Click on **Create** to create the item or items without review.

Click on **Create & Display** to directly display the created item or items. If only one item was created, the associated data record will open. If more than one item was created, a list of the items will open.

After the item or items have been created and before they are displayed if you have selected to create and display them, you will be informed about how many time records, expenses or external services were billed internally and/or externally. You specify whether the data records will be billed internally, externally or completely in the report view's properties (see "7.8.1 Activating the billing features" on page 144).

## Note for users of Easy Invoice

Do not bill time records, expenses and external services externally when you create items for them if you are using Easy Invoice and wish to create an invoice for those items later. You can only transfer items to an invoice if associated time records, expenses and external services are not billed externally.

When you create a print document for an invoice, the data records will automatically be billed externally.

The following sections describe details and specifics when creating items for time records, expenses and external services.

## Expenses, external services and time record lump sums

When you create items for expenses or external services, or when you create items for time records and select the **One item (lump sum)** option as **Item type**, exactly one item with a **Quantity** of 1.0 will be created for each primary project. The **Unit** will be adopted from the selected product. The total **Turnover** of the included expenses or external services, or when you create a lump sum for time records, the total **Actual turnover** of the included time records will be adopted as the item's **Price** and **Sum**.

## Time records by hourly rates

When you create items for time records and select one of the **One item for each hourly rate (days/hours)** options as **Item type**, one item will be created per primary project and per external hourly rate. As only the amount of the external hourly rate is distinguished, time records with different types may be billed via the same item if the valid external hourly rate is the same. The number of items to create will be displayed in brackets to the right of the **Items** caption.

Depending on the selected setting, **Days** or **Hours** will be adopted as **Unit**.

The total of the externally billable **Charged** working time of the included time records will be specified as the item's **Quantity**. The working time will be specified in person days or hours. A person day spans 8 hours in the default setting. You may change the duration of a person day in the **Time record** area of the Management Console. There you specify the duration in hours and minutes. All values between 1 and 24 hours are accepted.

The **Price** of each item is equal to the external daily or hourly rate when the working time is itemized by hourly rates. The daily rate is determined by multiplying the external hourly rate with the duration of a person day.

The **Sum** of each created item is equal to the total **Actual turnover** of the included time records.

## Contribution margin

Just like for manually created items, the **Contribution margin** will be calculated as the difference between an item's **Price** and the **Purchase price** entered in the selected product, multiplied by the item's **Quantity**.

When no purchase price has been entered in the selected product, the contribution margin will be equal to 100% and therefore equal to the item's **Sum**.

## Prices and discounts

The **Price** is not taken from the selected product when creating items for time records, expenses and external services. Instead it depends on the turnover entered in the associated data records or on the external daily or hourly rate of the associated time records.

For this reason, price and discount lists as well as individual prices and discounts that have been entered for the selected product with one of the Sales pro or Project modules are ignored here.

## Currency

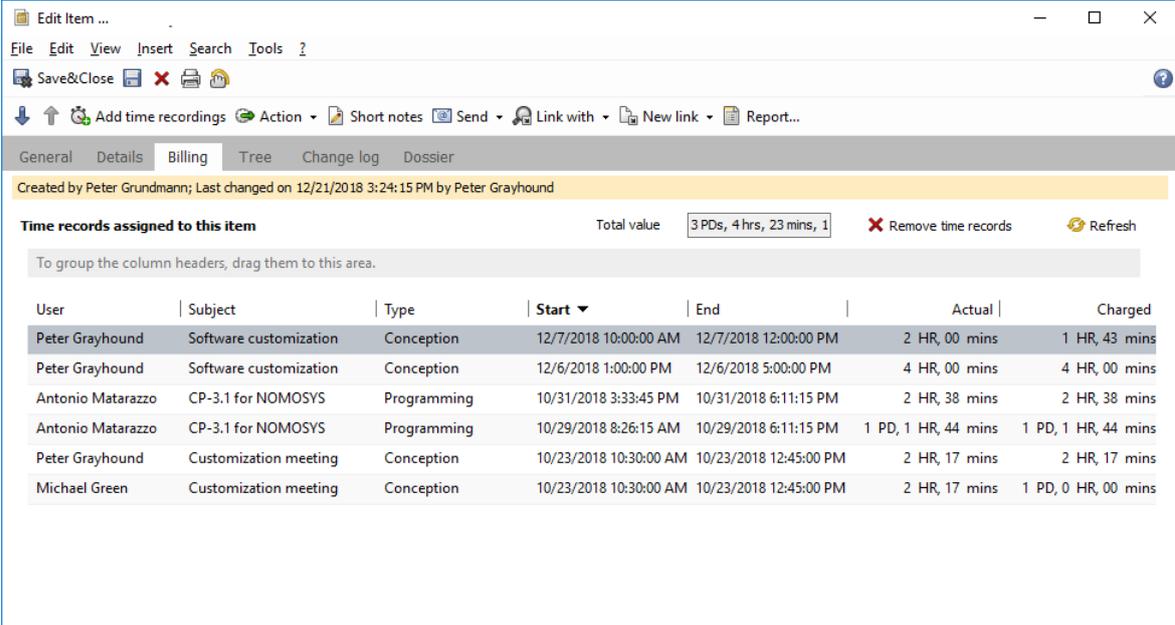
You can only create items for time records, expenses and external services in the base currency. It is not possible to create items via the billing preparation features for projects with a different currency.

You may add time records to an item with a different currency in the item's data record window (see "Adding time records in an item" on page 153).

Please note that the item will still be calculated in the base currency, such that you have to manually enter the correct values in this case.

### 7.8.4 Billed data records in the item

The time records, expenses or external services for which an item has been created will be displayed in the item's data record window in the **Billing** tab.



Created by Peter Grundmann; Last changed on 12/21/2018 3:24:15 PM by Peter Grayhound

**Time records assigned to this item** Total value 3 PDs, 4 hrs, 23 mins, 1 Remove time records Refresh

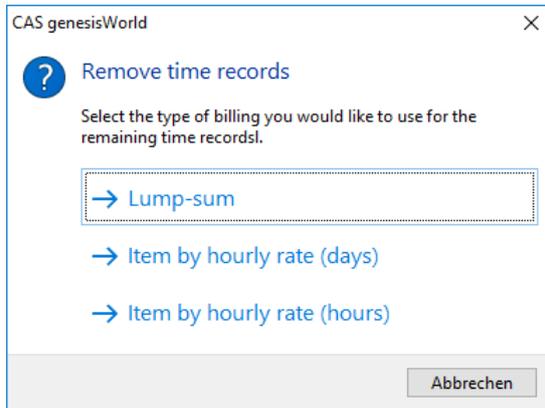
To group the column headers, drag them to this area.

User	Subject	Type	Start	End	Actual	Charged
Peter Grayhound	Software customization	Conception	12/7/2018 10:00:00 AM	12/7/2018 12:00:00 PM	2 HR, 00 mins	1 HR, 43 mins
Peter Grayhound	Software customization	Conception	12/6/2018 1:00:00 PM	12/6/2018 5:00:00 PM	4 HR, 00 mins	4 HR, 00 mins
Antonio Matarazzo	CP-3.1 for NOMOSYS	Programming	10/31/2018 3:33:45 PM	10/31/2018 6:11:15 PM	2 HR, 38 mins	2 HR, 38 mins
Antonio Matarazzo	CP-3.1 for NOMOSYS	Programming	10/29/2018 8:26:15 AM	10/29/2018 6:11:15 PM	1 PD, 1 HR, 44 mins	1 PD, 1 HR, 44 mins
Peter Grayhound	Customization meeting	Conception	10/23/2018 10:30:00 AM	10/23/2018 12:45:00 PM	2 HR, 17 mins	2 HR, 17 mins
Michael Green	Customization meeting	Conception	10/23/2018 10:30:00 AM	10/23/2018 12:45:00 PM	2 HR, 17 mins	1 PD, 0 HR, 00 mins

In items created from time records, the **Total value** field displays the total of **Charged** working hours of the associated time records.

Click on the **Remove time records** button to remove all selected time records from the item. This presupposes that the time records haven't been billed yet.

As when creating an item for time records, you will be asked to select how the item should be recalculated based on the remaining time records.



If the external hourly rates of the remaining time records differ, only the Lump-sum option will be available. With this selection, the **Quantity** of the item will be set to 1. The **Price** and thereby the **Sum** will be calculated based on the **Charged** working hours and the respective hourly rates for the individual time records.

With either of the **Item by hourly rate** options, the Quantity will be set to the duration in days or hours. The **Price** then corresponds to the daily or hourly rate.

### 7.8.5 Adding time records to an item

You can also add time records to an existing items.

To do this, use the associated option of the **Billing** menu in a report or the associated button in the item's data record window.

#### Adding time records in a report

Via **Add time records to item** in the **Billing** menu, you add a selection of time records sharing a common primary project to an existing item belonging to the same project.

As when creating an item for time records, you have the choice between a **Lump-sum** and an **Item by hourly rate** in **days** or **hours**.

The latter two options require that the item to which you add time records has been created for time records with the same option and therefore has the same daily or hourly rate as the selected time records.

When you select the **Add time records to item** option, you will first be asked to select the desired item:

Select item for the time recording...

To group the column headers, drag them to this area.

Date ▲	Description	Price	Quant	Unit	Sum	Status
10/1/2018	On-site consulting	1,299.00	1.000	days	1,299.00	In Process
10/1/2018	Service	1,000.00	3.000	days	3,000.00	In Process
10/1/2018	Software customization	1,000.00	1.000	days	1,000.00	In Process
10/1/2018	Database software	25.00	40.000	licenses	1,000.00	In Process
10/1/2018	Intranet software	10.00	24.000	licenses	240.00	In Process
10/1/2018	Software customization	100.00	1.000	days	100.00	In Process

Apply Cancel

After selecting an item, an overview of the change will be displayed:

Refreshing items...

Newly linked time records (1)

Charged

Actual turnover (EU)

All time records (1)

Charged

Actual turnover (EU)

---

**Item**

Item type

Date

Status

Product number

Product

Description

Newly linked time records

Change status

Refresh Refresh & display Cancel

Select here the desired **Item type** if the item was created by daily or hourly rate. The default setting **Lump-sum** is always available.

Moreover, if desired, you can change here the date, status, product and description of the item as well as the status of the time records to assign to it.

## Adding time records in an item

Via **Add time records** in the toolbar of an item's data record window, you can add a selection of time records to that item via the search window.

The screenshot shows the 'Edit Item' window with the following details:

- Title:** Edit Item ...
- Menu:** File, Edit, View, Insert, Search, Tools, ?
- Toolbar:** Save&Close, Add time recordings (highlighted), Action, Short notes, Send, Link with, New link, Report...
- Tabs:** General, Details, Tree, Change log, Dossier
- Created on:** 1/30/2019 3:05:27 PM from Peter Grayhound
- Date:** 1/30/2019
- Status:** Implementation
- Product number:** P38
- Product:** IT Service
- Alternative description:** Standard
- Description:** Installation
- Quantity:** 2.000
- Unit:** days
- Price:** 800.00 CHF
- Quoted price (CHF):** 800.00
- Discount relative (%):** 0.00
- Discount (CHF):** 0.00
- Contribution margin relative (%):** 100.00
- Contribution margin (CHF):** 1,600.00
- Sum (CHF):** 1,600.00
- Invoiced:** (empty)
- Receipt number:** (empty)
- Parent:** Baltech, Edwin-Ralf Baldur | CAS genesisWorld for Baltech | Select job...
- Notes:** (empty text area with Edit and Time stamp icons)

This way, you can only add time records that aren't externally billed and share the item's primary project.

## Adding time records to a foreign currency item

As opposed to the associated option in the report's **Billing** menu, you can use the feature described in the previous section to add time records to items differing from the base currency.

However, the item will still be recalculated in the base currency. The amount won't be converted automatically. Therefore, please calculate the price manually in this case and overwrite the automatically calculated price.

## 7.8.6 Item in billed data records

In the data record windows of time records, expenses and external services for which an item has been created, that item will be displayed under the **Parent** field.

Click on the associated button to open the linked item.

The screenshot shows a software application window titled "Edit Software customization ...". The window has a menu bar with "File", "Edit", "View", "Insert", "Search", and "Tools". Below the menu bar is a toolbar with icons for "Save&Close", "Print", "Undo", "Redo", and "Help". A secondary toolbar contains "Action", "Short notes", "Send", "Link with", "New link", and "Report...".

The main content area is divided into several sections:

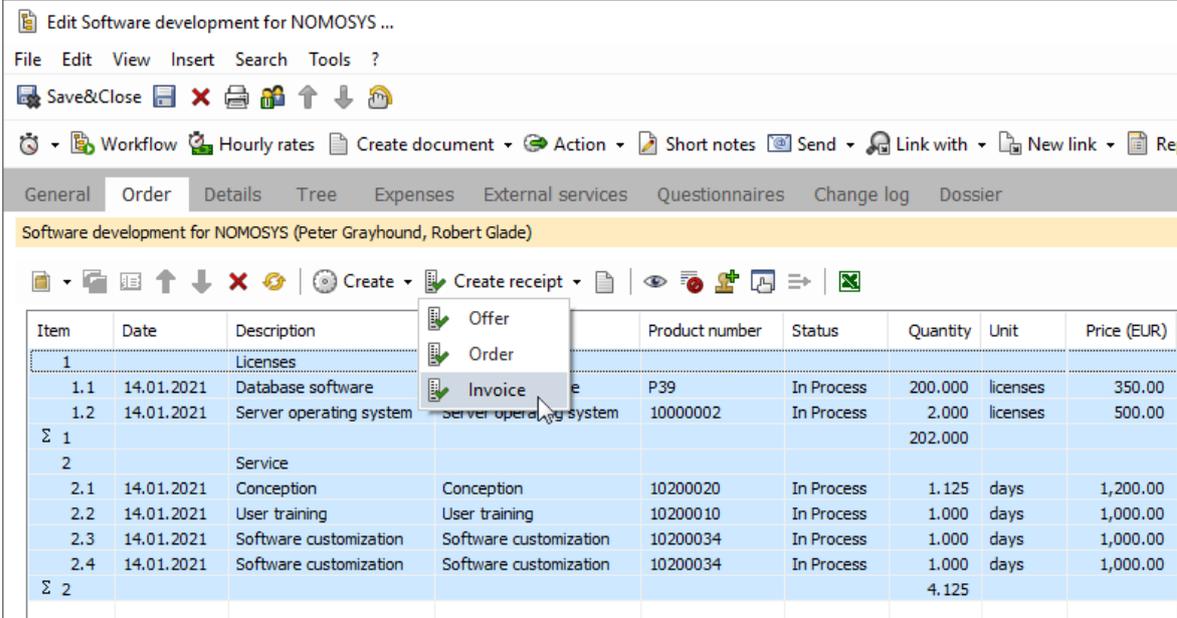
- General** (selected tab): Shows "Created on 12/08/2018 11:46:38 PM from Peter Grayhound".
- Subject**: Software customization
- User**: Peter Grayhound
- Type**: Conception
- Status**: (empty dropdown)
- From**: 10:00:00
- Start date**: Friday, December 7, 2018
- To**: 12:00:00
- End date**: Friday, December 7, 2018
- Actual**: 0 PD 2 hrs 00 min
- Charged**: 0 PD 1 hrs 43 min
- Billed internally by**: (empty)
- Billed externally by**: Peter Grayhound
- Billed internally on**: (empty)
- Billed externally on**: 12/15/2018 15:32:07
- Item**: Software customization

At the bottom, there are two text input fields:

- Internal text**: Project management customization
- External text**: Agreed project management customization

## 7.8.7 Project invoicing (with Easy Invoice)

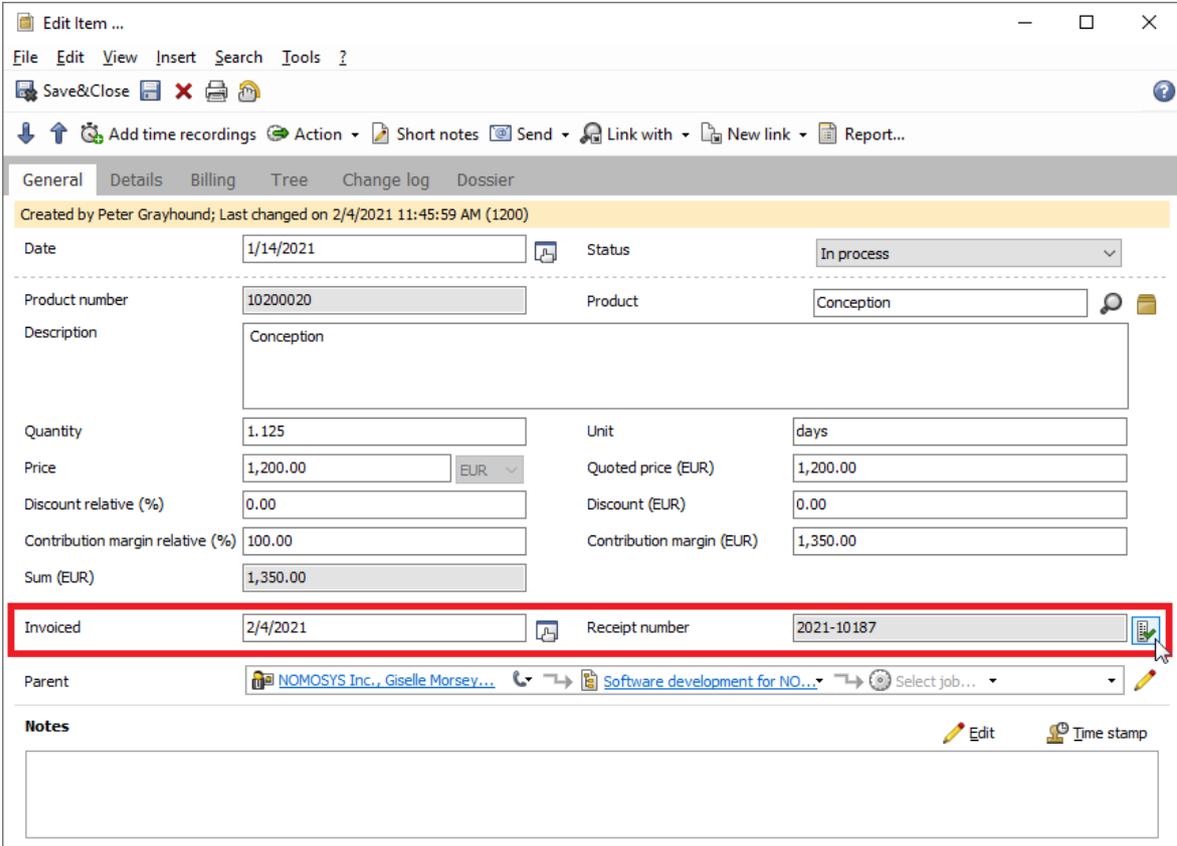
With Easy Invoice, you can create receipts for selected project items in the **Order** tab of a project.



The screenshot shows the 'Order' tab of a project management application. The main window title is 'Edit Software development for NOMOSYS ...'. The menu bar includes File, Edit, View, Insert, Search, and Tools. The toolbar contains icons for Save&Close, Print, Copy, Paste, and other actions. The main area shows a table of project items with columns: Item, Date, Description, Product number, Status, Quantity, Unit, and Price (EUR). A context menu is open over the table, showing options: Offer, Order, and Invoice. The 'Invoice' option is highlighted.

Item	Date	Description	Product number	Status	Quantity	Unit	Price (EUR)
1		Licenses					
1.1	14.01.2021	Database software	P39	In Process	200.000	licenses	350.00
1.2	14.01.2021	Server operating system	10000002	In Process	2.000	licenses	500.00
Σ 1					202.000		
2		Service					
2.1	14.01.2021	Conception	10200020	In Process	1.125	days	1,200.00
2.2	14.01.2021	User training	10200010	In Process	1.000	days	1,000.00
2.3	14.01.2021	Software customization	10200034	In Process	1.000	days	1,000.00
2.4	14.01.2021	Software customization	10200034	In Process	1.000	days	1,000.00
Σ 2					4.125		

When you create an invoice this way, the project items will be linked to it. After creating the associated print document, each project item displays the invoicing date and receipt.



The screenshot shows the 'Edit Item' window in the same application. The window title is 'Edit Item ...'. The menu bar includes File, Edit, View, Insert, Search, and Tools. The toolbar contains icons for Save&Close, Print, Copy, Paste, and other actions. The main area shows the details of a project item. The 'Invoiced' date is 2/4/2021 and the 'Receipt number' is 2021-10187. A red box highlights these fields.

Field	Value	Field	Value
Date	1/14/2021	Status	In process
Product number	10200020	Product	Conception
Description	Conception		
Quantity	1.125	Unit	days
Price	1,200.00 EUR	Quoted price (EUR)	1,200.00
Discount relative (%)	0.00	Discount (EUR)	0.00
Contribution margin relative (%)	100.00	Contribution margin (EUR)	1,350.00
Sum (EUR)	1,350.00		
Invoiced	2/4/2021	Receipt number	2021-10187
Parent	NOMOSYS Inc., Giselle Morsev...		

## Billed data records in the receipt item

The associated time records, expenses or external services are assigned to the associated receipt item and displayed in its detail view.

Receipt: single item

General | Time records

Data records assigned to this item      Total value: 1 PD, 1 hrs      Remove data records      Refresh

To group the column headers, drag them to this area.

User	Subject	Type	Start	End	Charged	Actual turnover
Michael Green	NOMOSYS Jour Fixe	Project management	1/21/2021 10:00:00 AM	1/21/2021 11:30:00 AM	1 HR, 30 mins	225.00
Robert Glade	NOMOSYS Jour Fixe	Project management	1/21/2021 10:00:00 AM	1/21/2021 11:30:00 AM	1 HR, 30 mins	225.00
Robert Glade	Reevaluate specification	Conception	1/14/2021 3:00:00 PM	1/14/2021 4:30:00 PM	1 HR, 30 mins	225.00
Robert Glade	NOMOSYS Jour Fixe	Project management	1/14/2021 10:00:00 AM	1/14/2021 11:30:00 AM	1 HR, 30 mins	225.00
Michael Green	NOMOSYS Jour Fixe	Project management	1/14/2021 10:00:00 AM	1/14/2021 11:30:00 AM	1 HR, 30 mins	225.00
Peter Grayhound	NOMOSYS Jour Fixe	Project management	12/7/2020 10:00:00 AM	12/7/2020 12:00:00 PM	1 HR, 30 mins	225.00

OK      Cancel

- For time records, the **Total value** field shows the sum of **Charged** hours invoiced via the receipt item.

Multiplied with the hourly rate valid for each time record, this value yields the associated **Actual turnover**, the total of which for all associated time records is the sum of a project or receipt item.

- Click on **Remove data records** to remove selected time records, expenses or external services from the receipt item and reset their external billing fields. This way you can clear billed data records for billing again after cancelling an associated invoice without removing billed data records from the cancelled invoice in the process (see „Cancelling a project invoice“ on page 158).

To bill the data records once more, you have to create new associated items, as described in section "7.8.3 Creating items" on page 147.

Please note that, when removing time records from a receipt item, their **Charged** hours are set to zero. In order to create another associated item, you therefore have to enter **Charged** hours for them again, as described in section "7.8.2 Preparing time records for billing" on page 146.

- Click on **Refresh** to reload the list of billed data records.

## Receipt item in billed data records

Billed data records show the associated receipt item and outgoing invoice.

The screenshot shows a software window titled "Edit NOMOSYS Jour Fixe...". The window has a menu bar (File, Edit, View, Insert, Search, Tools) and a toolbar with icons for Save&Close, Print, and other actions. Below the toolbar is a navigation bar with tabs for "General", "Tree", "Change log", and "Dossier". The main content area displays a record for "NOMOSYS Jour Fixe" created by Peter Grayhound on 1/14/2021. The record includes fields for Subject, User, Type, Status, From, To, Actual, Billed internally by, Billed externally by, Billed internally on, Billed externally on, Parent, Receipt item, and Outgoing invoice. The "Receipt item" field is highlighted with a red box, and the "Outgoing invoice" field is also highlighted with a red box. A mouse cursor is hovering over the "Open receipt" button. Below the record are sections for "Internal text" and "External text".

Created by Peter Grayhound on 1/14/2021 11:42:32 AM; Last changed on 2/4/2021 1:32:32 PM	
<b>Subject</b>	NOMOSYS Jour Fixe
User	Michael Green
Type	Project management
Status	
From	10:00:00
Start date	Thursday, January 14, 2021
To	11:30:00
End date	Thursday, January 14, 2021
Actual	0 PD 1 hrs 30 min
Charged	0 PD 1 hrs 30 min
Billed internally by	Peter Grayhound
Billed externally by	Peter Grayhound
Billed internally on	2/4/2021 13:32:20
Billed externally on	2/4/2021 13:32:32
Parent	NOMOSYS Inc., Giselle Morsey / Software development for N... / 4 Project management
Receipt item	Conception
Outgoing invoice	2021-10187
Item	Conception
Internal text	External text

You can remove this link in the receipt item's detail view (see previous section).

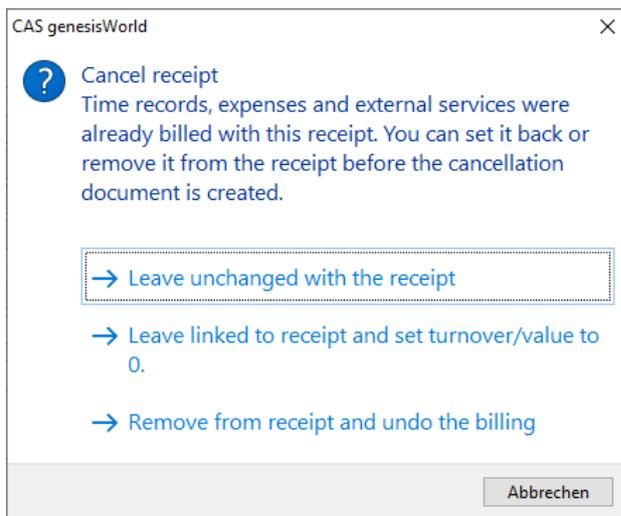
When you cancel an invoice, you also have the choice of removing all associated time records from the invoice and reset their external billing in order to bill them again (see „Cancelling a project invoice“ on the following page).

## Cancelling a project invoice

Via the **Create receipt** menu in the data record window of an invoice with a print document, you can cancel that invoice by creating a cancellation receipt for it.

The cancellation receipt contains offsetting entries for all invoiced items.

When creating a cancellation receipt for a project invoice, you will be asked what to do with the billed time records, expenses and external services:



- Select **Leave unchanged with the receipt** if the data records shouldn't be removed from the receipt and shouldn't be set to zero.

- Select **Leave linked to receipt and set turnover/value to 0** if the data records shouldn't be removed from the receipt but should be set to zero.

Select this option if you can't invoice the data records anew later.

- Select **Remove from receipt and undo the billing** to remove the data records from the receipt and reset the **Billed externally by/on** fields.

The data records won't be set to zero with this choice.

Select this option to invoice the data records anew later.

Regardless of cancellation, you can always remove billed data record from a receipt in the detail view of the associated receipt item (see „Billed data records in the receipt item“ on page 156).

## 7.8.8 Creating vendor credits (with Easy Invoice)

You can create vendor credits via the report view with Project and Easy Invoice in order to credit time records and expenses to contractors in projects.

### Licenses

This feature is available with the following licenses:

- Easy Invoice
- Project
- Report Manager for cross-customer vendor credits

### Configuration in the Management Console

To create vendor credits, you need to make some settings in the **Easy Invoice** area of the Management Console:

- Create receipt type and select print template
- Configure product default values
- Assign a number range to the receipt type

These settings are described under "9.1.2 Vendor credit settings" on page 188.

### Creditor configuration in companies or individual contacts

Creditors are the users entered for the time records and/or expenses to bill.

In order to create vendor credits, addresses linked to the users, i.e., employee data records are required.

- ✓ In the **Billing** tab of the associated company, the **VAT ID** or **Tax number** as well as the **Creditor number** must be entered.
- ✓ Vendor credits may also be created for individual contacts. As for companies, the **VAT ID** or **Tax number** as well as the **Creditor number** must be entered in the **Billing** tab.

## Time record billing type configuration for products

In the product data record for billing the time records, you determine in the **Billing type** field how time records will be billed via vendor credits:

The screenshot shows a software window titled "Edit Time records (days) ...". The window has a menu bar with "File", "Edit", "View", "Insert", "Search", and "Tools". Below the menu bar is a toolbar with icons for "Save&Close", "Print", "Send", "Link with", "New link", and "Report...". The main content area has tabs for "General", "Pictures", "Versions", "Price lists", "Discount lists", "Change log", and "Dossier". The "General" tab is active, showing a form for editing time records. The form includes fields for "Subject" (Time records (days)), "Product number" (1000001), "Price" (EUR), "Unit" (days), "Product group", "Purchase price", "Active" (checked), "Description", "Technical details", "Customer benefit", "Product manager" (Peter Grayhound), "Deputy", "Available from", "Available until", "Category", "Keywords", "Producer", "Maintenance item", "Area", and "Billing type". The "Billing type" dropdown menu is open, showing three options: "One item (lump sum)", "One item for each hourly rate (days)", and "One item for each hourly rate (hours)". The "Notes" field is empty.

- **One item (lump sum)** will bill the total costs of all the time records via a common lump sum item.
- **One item for each hourly rate (days)** will bill the costs of all time records with a common internal hourly rate via an item in days.

One item will be created for each internal hourly rate. The price per unit will be equal to the per diem rate and the quantity will be equal to the number of days.

- **One item for each hourly rate (hours)** will bill the costs of all time records with a common internal hourly rate via an item in hours.

One item will be created for each internal hourly rate. The price per unit will be equal to the hourly rate and the quantity will be equal to the number of hours.

## Creating vendor credits

After all prerequisites listed here are satisfied, the **Create vendor credit** button will be available in the **Billing** menu in the report view:

The screenshot shows the 'Billing: open' application window. The 'Billing' menu is open, displaying the following options:

- Prepare time records for billing
- Create items for expenses
- Create items for time records
- Add time records to item
- Create vendor credit** (highlighted)
- Bill time records internally
- Bill time records externally

The report view below the menu shows a table with the following data:

Filter	Actual (Sum)	Charged (Sum)
Peter Grundmann	4 PD, 0 HR, 09 mins	1 PD, 2 HR, 00 mins
> CAS genesisWorld for Devemit Ltd.	<b>1 PD, 7 HR, 30 mins</b>	1 PD, 2 HR, 00 mins
> Software development for NOMOSYS	2 PD, 0 HR, 39 mins	0 HR, 00 mins
Robert Glaser	3 PD, 5 HR, 56 mins	3 PD, 2 HR, 42 mins
> Database software for Computeam	1 PD, 4 HR, 29 mins	1 PD, 4 HR, 29 mins
> Software development for Penthesilea	2 PD, 1 HR, 26 mins	1 PD, 6 HR, 12 mins
Result	7 PD, 6 HR, 06 mins	4 PD, 4 HR, 42 mins

Below the table, there are tabs for 'Projects', 'Time records', 'Expenses', 'Items', 'Primary address', 'Primary project', 'Primary job', 'Primary job #2', and 'Report data'. The 'Report data' tab is active, showing a table with the following data:

Number	Subject	Type	Status	Costs	Start	End	Person responsible
Pr34	CAS genesisWorld for Devemit Ltd.	Product sales	In Process	2.150,00	13.08.2018	22.12.2018	Peter Grayhound

You may select the data records to bill via the report view. In the screenshot above, all data records belonging to the "CAS genesisWorld for Devemit Ltd." project have been selected. It is also possible to select data records belonging to multiple projects. In this case, vendor credits will be created per selected project (see below).

The data records that will actually be billed are the selected time records and expenses in any case. These data records will be billed internally via the vendor credit and time-stamped accordingly.

One receipt will be created per recipient (creditor, i.e., user) and project.

A primary link will be entered between each receipt and the respective associated project, which is the primary project of the billed time records and expenses.

The billed time records and expenses will be listed in the associated receipt items created for them.

## Billing prerequisites

The following prerequisites apply to billing:

- The data records to be billed have primary projects.
- The data records to be billed must not have been billed internally.
- Addresses linked to users are available, i.e., they are employee data records.
- The **VAT ID** or **Tax number** as well as the **Creditor number** fields must have been entered in the **Billing** tab of the associated addresses.
- If you only wish to bill expenses, then all the expenses must have the same currency.
- If time records are to be billed, then any expenses billed at the same time need to have the base currency.

## Billed sum and currency

The billed sum is derived from the time records and the expenses.

- **Time records:** Actual costs (actual \* internal hourly rate)
- **Expenses:** Net costs

Time records will always be billed in the base currency.

If you are only billing expenses, other currencies are possible. However, all the data records have to have the same currency.

## Internal hourly rates

The internal hourly rates can be defined on the following levels:

- **Global:** in the Management Console under **Time record > Hourly rates**
- **Customer: Hourly rates** button in the associated company address
- **Project: Hourly rates** button in the project data record

To enter hourly rates for a customer or project, you first need to turn on this feature in the **Time record** area of the Management Console under **Hourly rates**.

Hourly rates can be equal to null. In this case, associated time records will not be included in the sum. However, they will be marked as billed and listed in the work report.

## 7.8.9 Billing time records

You can bill time records selected in the view via the **Billing** menu if they have not already been billed. When you do, the current date and your user name will be written into the **Internally/Externally billed on/by** fields. Afterwards, the number of time records that have been selected and the number of time records that have actually been billed will be displayed.

 **Bill time records internally:** Here you internally bill selected time records. The **Actual** working time will be multiplied with the **internal hourly rate** valid for the time record's **Type** and **User** and stored in the **Actual costs** field with a precision of up to 4 decimals. Displayed values are rounded to 2 decimals.

 **Bill time records externally:** Here you externally bill the time records selected in the report view. The externally billable **Charged** working time will be multiplied with the **external hourly rate** valid for the time record's **Type** and **User** and stored in the **Actual turnover** field with a precision of up to 4 decimals. Displayed values are rounded to 2 decimals.

You will find more billing features under **Billing** in the time record list's context menu.

## 8 Other planning views

The following planning views are available with Project in addition to the project and resource planning views described in chapter 5:

- **8.1 Team planning in the Desktop Client (page 164):** With utilization and skills
- **8.2 Team planning in the Web Client (page 176):** With map view
- **8.3 Timeline view in the Web Client (page 181):** Chronological order of data records
- **8.4 Board view in the Web Client (page 184):** Group data records by field values

### 8.1 Team planning in the Desktop Client

The following sections describe the features of the interactive planner view for team planning in the Desktop Client.

- 8.1.1 The Gantt view (page 164)
- 8.1.2 The workload view (page 167)
- 8.1.3 View options of the interactive planner view (page 168)
- 8.1.4 Creating an interactive planner view (page 169)

#### 8.1.1 The Gantt view

The interactive planner view groups appointments, tasks, holiday entries, jobs and projects by users and resources. The view supports two display modes.

The **Gantt** view visualizes the duration of the data records.

User	Sum	Monday, 11.02.2019	Tuesday, 12.02.2019	Wednesday, 13.02.2019	Thursday, 14.02.2019	Friday, 15.02.2019 (CW 7/2019)
Antonio Matarazzo	2 Hrs, 00 min					Mo...
Ben Miller	5 Hrs, 30 min					Mo...
Frank Shreeve	1 PD, 1 Hrs, 00 min		Prep...	C...		Au...
Michael Green	1 PD, 0 Hrs, 00 min		Workshop CRM live			
Peter Grayhound	1 PD, 6 Hrs, 30 min		Workshop CRM live	Ma...		
Robert Glade	2 PD, 2 Hrs, 00 min	P...	Workshop CRM live	Ma...		Au...
Sum	7 PD, 1 Hrs, 00 min	P...	Work...	C...	Ma...	Ma...

Type	Out ...	Location	Start	Subject	Duration
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>			2/12/2019 4:00 PM	Return from destination	30 mins
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>			2/12/2019 2:00 PM	Project meeting NOMOSYS	2 hrs
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>			2/12/2019 1:30 PM	Trip to destination	30 mins
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>			2/12/2019 11:00 AM	Prepare project meeting NOMOSYS	2 hrs, 30 mins
<input type="checkbox"/>			2/12/2019 9:00 AM	Workshop CRM live	8 hrs

- **Working hours:** user working hours and resource availability are highlighted in white.

If available, the working hours entered in the Management Console under **Time record > Working hours** are used.

To apply changes made to working hours in the Management Console to the interactive planner view while it's open, click on the **Refresh** button in the toolbar.

For users who have no working hours set in the Management Console, the working hours stored in the user settings in the **Calendar** tab are displayed.

Changes made there are only applied the next time you log on.

- **Appointments, projects, jobs and holiday entries:** For appointments, projects, jobs and holiday entries, the duration from **Start** to **End** is displayed.
  - **Private and confidential appointments:** In addition to your own private and confidential appointments, private and confidential appointments of other users and resources are also displayed with the respective associated icon if you have sufficient access rights to them.
 

Private appointments of other users and resources are only displayed with their subject if you are also a participant. Only in this case can you open them as well.

Confidential appointments of other users and resources are only displayed with their subject if you are also a participant or have external access with the **Full rights, access to confidential** level. Only in this case can you open them as well.
  - **Display of residual leave from CAS teamWorks:** If leave entitlement has been defined for you in CAS teamWorks, the interactive planner view will display the residual leave in each interval as availability to its left.
 

The residual leave at the beginning of the scale is displayed as total availability. Spent or expired leave days are displayed as workload.

## Note

Please note that it is not possible to create or edit appointments in the Gantt view if you are using the Exchange sync module.

- **Tasks:** For tasks, the nominal working time entered in the **Nominal** field is equally distributed to the participants. Each participant's proportion of the working time is then distributed equally to his working hours during the remaining days before the deadline.
- **Overlaps** are highlighted in red.
- **Open data records:** Double-click a bar or list entry to open the associated data record in its data record window. Alternatively, you open data records via the **Open** sub-menu in the view's context menu.

- **Create data records:** Double-click on the desired start time in the associated chart row to create a data record. Alternatively, you create data records by right-clicking on the desired start time and selecting the **New** option from the context menu.
- **Delete data records:** You may delete data records via the list or via the **Delete** sub-menu in the view's context menu.
- **Edit schedule:** Using the mouse, you edit the start and end of projects, jobs, appointments and holiday entries via drag-and-drop.

You cannot edit the deadlines of tasks here.

- ◀ **Edit duration at start:** In order to edit the start and duration at the same time in a data record, leaving the end unchanged, click at the left border of the associated bar, hold the mouse button and move the border to the desired place.
- ▶ **Edit duration at end:** In order to edit the end and duration at the same time in a data record, leaving the start unchanged, click at the right border of the associated bar, hold the mouse button and move the border to the desired place.
- ↔ **Move:** In order to move a data record, leaving the duration unchanged, click at the bar in the middle and drag it to the desired place. You can move data records of a smaller duration by pressing the [Alt] key first and holding it while you are moving the data record.
  - **Detail level during moving:** The step width during moving depends on the period setting. Hold [Alt]+[V] in order to adjust data records in smaller steps.
    - Days:** 1 hour; with [Alt]+[V] 15 minutes.
    - Weeks:** 1 day; with [Alt]+[V] 1 hours.
    - Months, quarters, years:** 1 week; with [Alt]+[V] 1 day.
- **Replace appointment or job participant:** Proceed as follows to replace a participant in an appointment or job.
  - ✓ Press and hold the [Shift] key.
  - ✓ Click on the appointment or job in the row of the user you wish to remove and hold the mouse button.
  - ✓ Drag the appointment or job to the associated row next to the desired new participant and release the mouse button.

## Note

When you replace a participant in a resource planning job, the resource plan's participant will not be replaced.

## 8.1.2 The workload view

The workload view displays the workload caused by the data records selected for display.

User	Sum	CW 7/2019 (11.02.-17.02.)	CW 8/2019 (18.02.-24.02.)	CW 9/2019 (25.02.-03.03.)
Antonio Matarazzo	1 PD, 0 Hrs, 00 min / 15 PD, 0 Hrs, 00 min	1 PD, 0 Hrs, 00 min / 5 PD, 0 Hrs, 00 min	0 Hrs, 00 min / 5 PD, 0 Hrs, 00 min	0 Hrs, 00 min / 5 PD, 0 Hrs, 00 min
Michael Green	5 PD, 0 Hrs, 00 min / 7 PD, 4 Hrs, 00 min	1 PD, 5 Hrs, 20 min / 2 PD, 4 Hrs, 00 min	1 PD, 5 Hrs, 20 min / 2 PD, 4 Hrs, 00 min	1 PD, 5 Hrs, 20 min / 2 PD, 4 Hrs, 00 min
Peter Grayhound	15 PD, 5 Hrs, 00 min / 15 PD, 0 Hrs, 00 min	2 PD, 1 Hrs, 00 min / 5 PD, 0 Hrs, 00 min	6 PD, 6 Hrs, 00 min / 5 PD, 0 Hrs, 00 min	6 PD, 6 Hrs, 00 min / 5 PD, 0 Hrs, 00 min
Robert Glade	15 PD, 3 Hrs, 30 min / 15 PD, 0 Hrs, 00 min	1 PD, 6 Hrs, 30 min / 5 PD, 0 Hrs, 00 min	4 PD, 2 Hrs, 30 min / 5 PD, 0 Hrs, 00 min	9 PD, 2 Hrs, 30 min / 5 PD, 0 Hrs, 00 min
Sum	37 PD, 0 Hrs, 30 min / 52 PD, 4 Hrs, 00 min	6 PD, 4 Hrs, 50 min / 17 PD, 4 Hrs, 00 min	12 PD, 5 Hrs, 50 min / 17 PD, 4 Hrs, 00 min	17 PD, 5 Hrs, 50 min / 17 PD, 4 Hrs, 00 min

Subject	Type	Status	Start	End	Duration
2.5 Installation	Service	Completed	2/11/2019 12:00 AM	2/16/2019 12:00 AM	5 days
2 Project management	Project management	In process	1/17/2019 12:00 AM	3/2/2019 12:00 AM	32 days
4 Project management	Project management	In process	1/14/2019 12:00 AM	3/2/2019 12:00 AM	35 days
3 Documentation	Documentation	In process	1/14/2019 12:00 AM	3/2/2019 12:00 AM	35 days

- Working hours:** The working hours are displayed per period. As in the Gantt view, the working hours entered in the Management Console under **Time record > Working hours** are used where available. For users who have no working hours defined there, the working hours are taken from the user settings.
- Person days (PD):** In the default setting, 8 hours are subsumed under one person day. You determine the duration of a person day in the Management Console under **Time record > General**.
- Workload display:** Either workload or availability is displayed (see "Workload mode" on page 168).
- Sum display:** In the view's properties, you may select a different display for the total sum displayed in the last sum row (see "Workload in sum rows" on page 174).
- Signal colors:** You may modify thresholds and signal colors for low workload or overload in the Management Console under **Project > Resource planning**.
  - Blue:** low workload (below 50%)
  - Yellow:** overload (more than 100%)
  - Red:** severe overload (more than 150%)

### 8.1.3 View options of the interactive planner view

The following view options are available in both display modes.

- **Modify start date, period and interval:** You specify the view's start date in the From field in the top left toolbar area.

 **Today:** Here you set the start date to the current day.

Using the two menus next to the date field you select the period and interval. Days, weeks, months and years are available for selection.

As a selection of weeks, months or years will always display full weeks, months or years, the start date displayed in the view may differ from the selected start date in this case:

- **Weeks:** Monday of the week of the selected start date
- **Months:** First day of the month of the selected start date
- **Years:** First day of the year of the selected start date

The selected period, however, refers to the selected start date. Therefore, more weeks, months or years than selected may be displayed.

- **Select zoom level:** Using the menu in the top right toolbar area you specify the Gantt view's zoom level. Values from 10-150% (steps of five) and from 150-750% (steps of ten) are available for selection.

 **Show or hide activity list:** Here you show or hide the activity list. It displays all data records of the cell currently selected in the planner view.

- **The resource plan list:** In the workload view, a resource plan list is displayed next to the activity list. If you have set the workload from jobs to be calculated from resource plans in the view's properties, the resource plan list shows associated resource plans when clicking on a job or sum row.

 **Show or hide activities:** Press this button to hide the rows for the individual data record types. Data records selected for display are still shown in the sum row.

- **Show or hide appointments, tasks, projects, jobs or holiday entries:** Click on the symbol of a data record type to show or hide the associated data records in the view. Data records hidden in this way are not considered in the workload.

 **Show or hide sum:** Here you determine whether a sum row should be displayed for every user and resource. In the sum row, you see all data records selected for display and the subtotal. The total sum for all users and resources selected for display cannot be hidden.

 **Show Gantt or workload view:** Here you switch between the Gantt and workload view. When the button is selected, the Gantt view is displayed. Regardless of the selected display mode, all data records selected for display are considered.

- **Workload mode:** Using the four buttons to the right of the Gantt button you select one of four display modes for the workload.

-  Workload in hours
-  Workload in percent (proportion of working hours)
-  Availability in hours
-  Number of activities

 **Select skills:** Here you can filter the users that are displayed by skills.

If you do, only users with at least the selected minimum level for each selected skill will be displayed.

To do this, first click **Display all** in the **Select skills** window.

Then, right-click a skill to select the desired minimum level.

Once you confirm, only users with at least the selected level for each selected skill will be displayed.

To reset the filter for a skill, right-click on the skill in the **Select skills** window to open the associated context menu and select the **Reset** option.

Please note that you can preset the skill filter via the view properties. This is described in section "0 Skills" on page 175. There, you can also learn how you enter skills for employees.

 **Refresh:** Here you refresh the view to reload working hours of users, availability hours of resources and all data records selected for display.

 **Save Gantt view as picture:** Here you save the Gantt view as a picture file in the Windows BMP bitmap format.

 **Export workload to Excel:** Here you export the workload view to Microsoft Excel.

#### 8.1.4 Creating an interactive planner view

You insert the view in your program navigator in the following way.

- ✓ Right-click on the desired place to call up the context menu.
- ✓ Select **Create new view**. The view wizard opens.
- ✓ Select **Planner (interactive)**. Then click **Next**.
- ✓ Enter the desired name for the view. Then click **Next**.
- ✓ Select the desired participants and resources. Then click **Next**.
- ✓ Select the desired settings as described in the following sections. Then click **Finish**.

## Period

In the **Period** tab, you make the following settings.

The screenshot shows the 'View wizard' dialog box for the 'Planner (interactive)' view. The 'Time period' tab is selected. The 'Select start date' section has 'Today' selected. The 'Select forecasting horizon' section has '7' days selected. The 'Display days' section has 'Display 24 hours' selected. The 'Present point in time' section has 'Display present point in time' checked. Navigation buttons at the bottom include 'Cancel', '< Back', 'Next >', and 'Finish'.

- **Set start date**
  - With the **Today** option, the view starts with the current date.
  - With the **This date** option, you specify a date. You can have the current month and/or year inserted with this option.
  - With the last option, you specify a week count within the current month (1-4) and weekday (e.g., the first Monday of the current month.)
- **Select forecasting horizon:** Here you specify over how many days, weeks, months or years the view stretches.
- **Display days:** Here you specify whether each day should be displayed with 24 hours or only with the stored working hours of the employees selected for display.
 

With the **Show only own working hours** setting, working hours of employees selected for display that do not overlap with the working hours of the current user are hidden.
- **Present point in time:** Here you specify whether the current point in time should be displayed as a vertical red line. If the current point in time is not displayed in the view, the red line appears at the beginning of the following day.

## Activities

In the **Activities** tab, you make the following settings.

- **Display activities:** Here you specify whether and how appointments, tasks, jobs, projects and holiday entries are displayed.
  -  **Hide activities:** Press this button to hide the rows for the individual data record types. Data records selected for display are still shown in the sum row.
  - **Show or hide appointments, tasks, projects, jobs or holiday entries:** Click on the symbol of a data record type to show or hide the associated data records in the view. Data records hidden in this way are not considered in the workload.
    -  **Set Filter:** You may enter filter conditions for every selected activity type to limit the activities that should be considered.
  - Select view format:** You may select a view format to use in the associated list for every selected activity type.
-  **Show or hide sum:** Here you determine whether a sum row should be displayed for every user and resource. In the sum row, you see all data records selected for display and the subtotal. The total sum for all users and resources selected for display can not be hidden.

🔿 **Project link filter:** Here you filter by the primary projects of the data records to display.

- **Display activity list:** Here you specify whether the activity list should be displayed when opening the view and how high it should be. When it was hidden and is set to be displayed in the view, it will also obtain the height set here.
- **Colors:** Here you change the line and fill colors used in the view. For tasks, you may allocate different colors to each of the three priority levels. Under **Fill color**, you may also change the color used to display overlaps.

You may allocate a different color to every available combination of type and status for each data record type. Data records for whose type and status no colors were defined here will be displayed in the default colors.

## Workload

In the **Workload** tab, you make the following settings.

The screenshot shows the 'View wizard' dialog box for the 'Planner (interactive)' window, specifically the 'Workload' tab. The dialog has four tabs: 'Time period', 'Activities', 'Workload', and 'Skills'. The 'Workload' tab is active. It contains several sections of settings:

- Include in workload:** A list of checkboxes for including different data record types:
  - Include appointments in workload (checked)
  - Include priority A tasks in workload (checked)
  - Include priority B tasks in workload (checked)
  - Include priority C tasks in workload (checked)
  - Include jobs in workload (unchecked), with sub-options:  Only during working hours,  Calculate from resource plans
  - Add projects to workload (checked), with sub-option:  Only during working hours
  - Include holidays in workload (checked), with sub-option:  Only during working hours
- Workload by activities:** A list of checkboxes for how to calculate workload:
  - Workload hours (checked)
  - Workload percentage (unchecked)
  - Availability hours (unchecked)
  - Number of activities (unchecked)
  - Display working hours (checked)
- Workload in sum rows:** A list of checkboxes for how to display workload in sum rows:
  - Different display in total line (checked)
  - Workload hours (unchecked)
  - Workload percentage (checked)
  - Availability hours (unchecked)
  - Number of activities (unchecked)
- View:** Radio buttons for the view type:
  - Gantt view (selected)
  - Workload view (unchecked)
- Display sum column

At the bottom, there are navigation buttons: 'Cancel', '< Back', 'Next >', and 'Finish'.

- **Include in workload:** Here you specify which data record types should be included in the workload to what extent.

## Note

Hidden data records are never included in the workload. Displayed data records are included in the workload if they are selected here.

- **Workload from appointments:** If appointments are displayed and included in the workload, each appointment's duration is added to the total workload.
- **Workload from tasks:** Tasks are distinguished by priority.

If tasks are displayed, the **Nominal** value from each task with a priority level to be included in the workload is added to the total workload.

The working time is equally distributed to the participants. Each participant's portion of the working time is then distributed equally to his working hours during the remaining days before the deadline.

- **Workload from jobs:** Jobs may be included in the workload in two mutually exclusive ways.

**Calculate from resource plans:** Select this option to display the remaining working time from associated resource plan as workload from jobs.

For each displayed user who has a resource plan with remaining ETC in a displayed job, the ETC is distributed equally to his working hours during the remaining job duration.

**Job duration:** If the **Calculate from resource plans** option is not selected, the portion of the job duration in the display period will be added to the total workload.

With the **Only during working hours** option selected, only the portion of the job duration which overlaps the working hours will be added to the total workload.

- **Workload from projects:** If projects are displayed and included in the workload, the portion of the project duration in the display period will be added to the total workload.

With the **Only during working hours** option selected, only the portion of the project duration which overlaps the working hours will be added to the total workload.

- **Workload from holiday entries:** If holiday entries are displayed and included in the workload, the portion of the holiday duration in the display period will be added to the total workload.

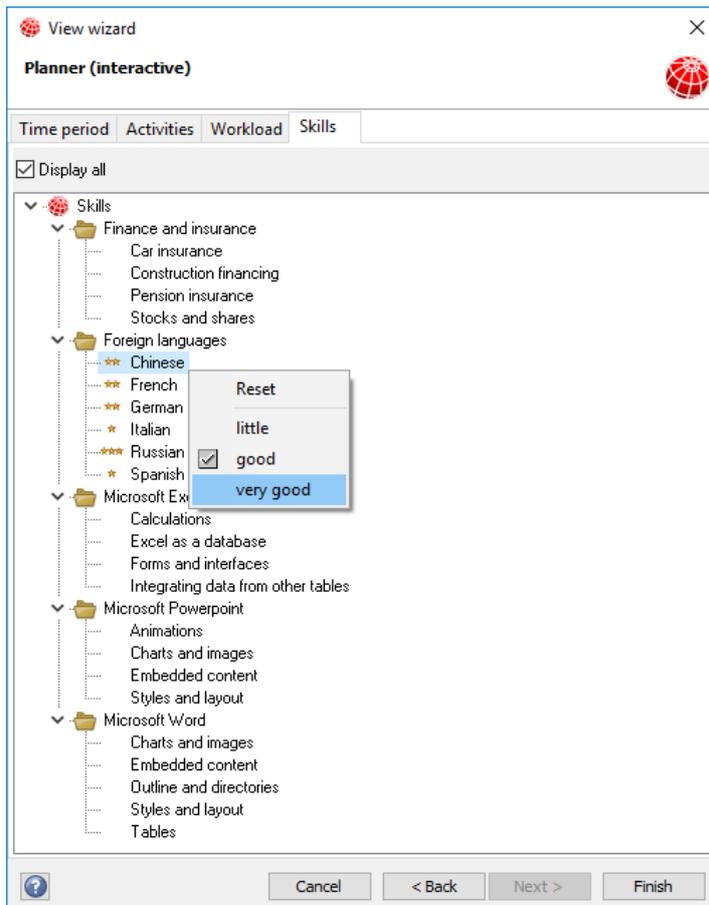
With the **Only during working hours** option selected, only the portion of the holiday duration which overlaps the working hours will be added to the total workload.

- **Workload by activities:** Here you select the display mode for the workload. It will be used in the sum column and in the workload view.
  - **Display working hours:** Here you specify whether the working hours should be displayed in the **Workload in hours** and **Availability in hours** modes.
- **Workload in sum rows:** If the total sum in the bottommost row should be displayed differently, select the **Different display in total line** option. Then select the desired display mode.
- **View:** Here you select the display mode when opening the planner view, **Gantt view** or **Workload view**.
- **Show sum colum:** Here you select whether the sum column should be displayed. It shows the sum of the workload or availability in the display period.

## Skills

In the **Skills** tab, you filter the view by users' skills. Only user having at least all given skills will be displayed.

- ✓ Right-click a skill to select the desired level.
- ✓ Select **Reset** to remove the filter for a skill.



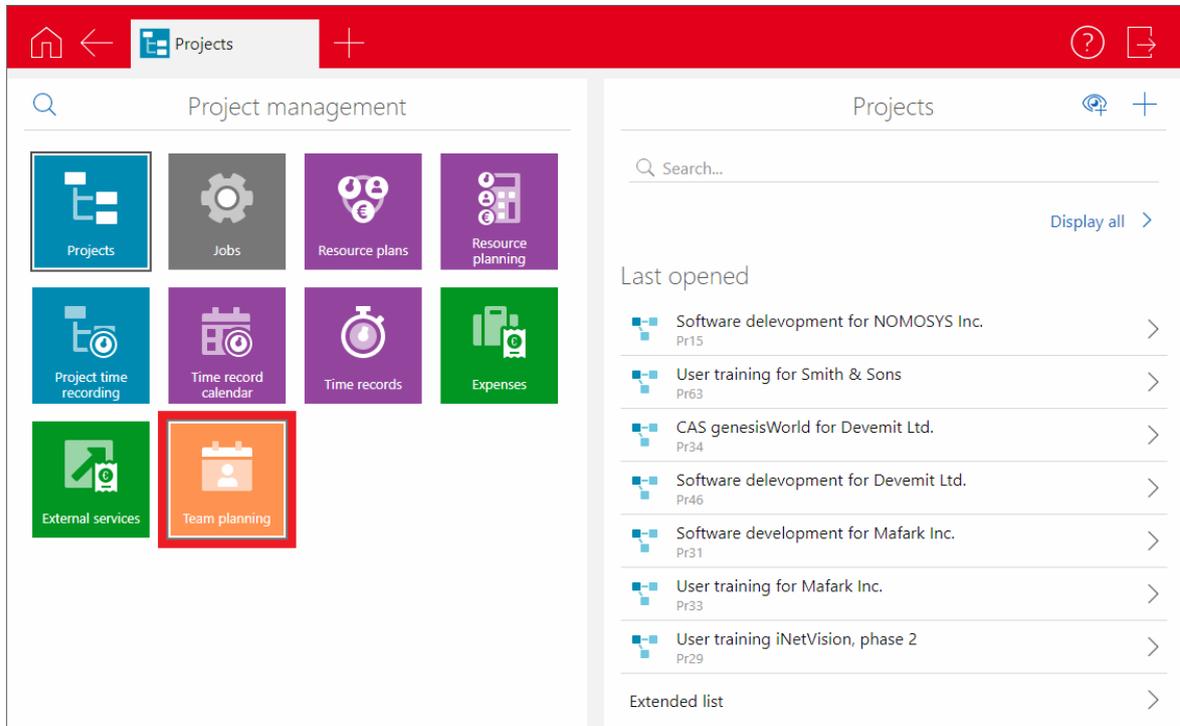
- **Enter skills (synchronous with CAS teamWorks):** The **Skills** tab is displayed in addresses with employee links. The employee link associates an address with a user. You may enter or remove it with the **Display/Hide employee data** option in the **Tools** menu of the address's data record window.

You define the skills available here in the Management Console under **Project > Skills**.

If you are also using CAS teamWorks, the skills defined there will be adopted and may be edited synchronously in CAS genesisWorld.

## 8.2 Team planning in the Web Client

The **Team planning** app is available in the **Project management** app group.

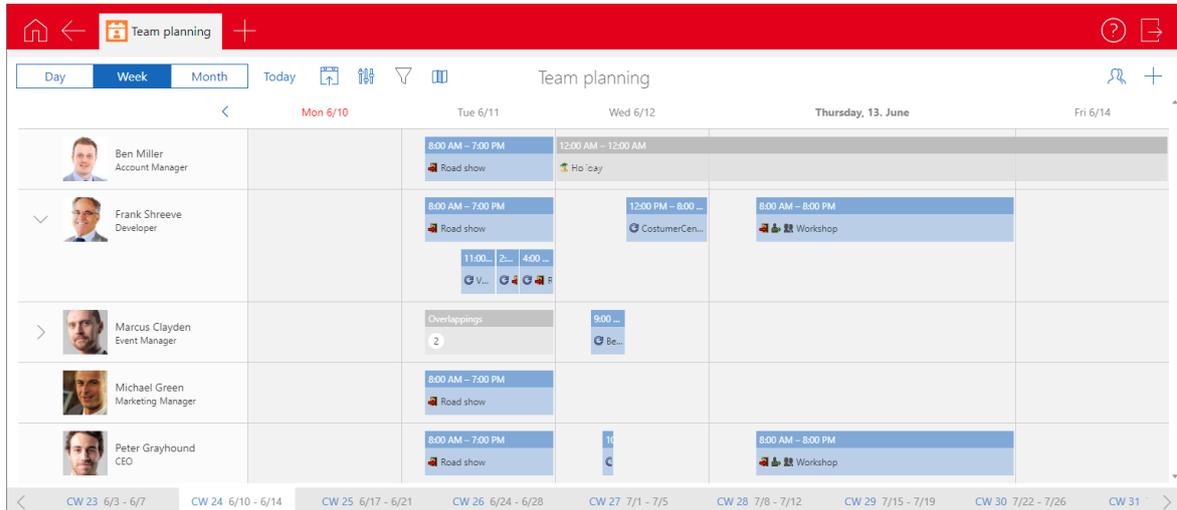


The following sections describe the presentation and features of the app.

- 8.2.1 Presentation and editing of appointments (page 177)
- 8.2.2 Change display mode and focus (page 178)
- 8.2.3 Change display date (page 178)
- 8.2.4 Change view settings (page 178)
- 8.2.5 Display in map (page 179)
- 8.2.6 Create appointment (page 180)
- 8.2.7 Collapse or expand user list (page 180)

## 8.2.1 Presentation and editing of appointments

The app displays a row for each selected user. Appointments (blue) and holiday entries (grey) are displayed per user and day on a timeline with hourly precision. Hints display appointment and holiday entry details. Public holidays are displayed with red captions.



- Click an appointment to open the associated editing view.
- Drag an appointment within a row to move it on the timeline. Please note that this is only possible for appointments that are completely displayed.
- Drag an appointment's left or right edge within a row to change its start or end.
- Drag an appointment between rows to replace a participant by another one (e.g., drag from a placeholder resource to a user to assign that user to the appointment, see "Resource as placeholder" in section "8.2.4 Change view settings" on page 179).
- Select a period to create a new appointment. Alternatively, click on the plus icon at the top right to create an appointment (see "8.2.6 Create appointment" on page 180).
- 🌿 Holiday entries are displayed as grey bars and can't be opened or edited in the app.
- Overlaps are displayed as light grey bars. Click on the grey overlaps bar or the arrow at the left edge of the associated row to expand all overlapping appointments and holidays.
- Icons displayed for appointments indicate various properties:
  - 🔄 Recurring (part of a series)
  - 🔒 Private
  - 🔒 Confidential
  - 🚪 Out of office
  - 👤 One or more external participants
  - 👥 One or more participating groups

## 8.2.2 Change display mode and focus

The view displays the appointments of a day, week or month.

Click **Day**, **Week** or **Month** to change the view mode:

- **Day**
  - The timeline displays the day above and hours below.
  - The precision for displaying and editing appointments are quarter hours.
  - Initially, the first displayed hour is focussed and displayed with a greater width.  
Click on the column header of another hour to switch the focus.
- **Week**
  - The timeline displays the days of the selected week.
  - The precision for displaying and editing appointments are hours.
  - Initially, the current day (or Monday if the current week is not displayed) is focussed and displayed with a greater width.  
Click on the column header of another day to switch the focus.
- **Month**
  - The timeline displays weeks above and days below.
  - The precision for displaying and editing appointments are days.
  - Initially, the current week (when opening the view) or the first displayed week (after switching the date) is focussed and displayed with a greater width.  
Click on the column header of another hour to switch the focus.

## 8.2.3 Change display date

In addition to the view mode, you can select a date via the buttons at the top left:

- Click **Today** to jump to the current date.



Click this to select a date in the calendar.

- Alternatively, use the timeline below the view to switch to another date.

## 8.2.4 Change view settings

Using the slider, filter and user icons, you can change various view settings.



Click this to change view settings:

- Visibility of weekends

- Working hours to be displayed (start and end); please note that you can't drag appointments starting or ending outside displayed working hours.
- User employee address filter field (via filter icon at top right, see below); requires users to be linked with employee addresses.

Any fields with multiple selection (checkbox list) input help items will be available.

- User employee address grouping field (users will be grouped by this field); requires users to be linked with employee addresses.

Any fields with single selection input help items will be available.

- Resource as placeholder (displayed in a separate row to schedule appointments not yet assigned to a specific user. Drag such an appointment to the desired user to assign that user to that appointment).
- Color classification (select a field with a single selection input help to assign colors to field values. You may select the **Type** and **Status** fields individually or in combination. Select the **Type / Status** item to assign a color to each type and each type/status combination).

Changes will only be applied after confirming your selection by clicking **Apply** both in the **Color classification** and **View properties** windows.



Click this to filter the displayed users by the employee address filter field selected in the settings. Selecting multiple items will filter the view such that only users with all of these items will be displayed. For instance, if you filter users by language and select multiple languages, only users knowing all selected languages will be displayed.



Click this to select the users to display.

## 8.2.5 Display in map

Click on the map icon to display all appointments with a georeferenced primary address in the map view.



Click this to display the appointments of the team planning view in the map view.

- On the right hand side, a list of the appointments is displayed.
- Click on the location of one or more appointments to filter the list.
- Click on the location again to display all appointments again.
- Click on an appointment in the list to show its location on the map and other details.
- For locations with only one appointment, details of that appointment will also be displayed when you hover over the location.
- Use the toolbar to change the period or participants of the appointments to display.

## 8.2.6 Create appointment

Click on the plus icon or select the desired period (see "8.2.1 Presentation and editing of appointments" on page 177) to create an appointment.

 Click this to create an appointment. Initially, you will be entered as participant. If a planning resource is selected, it will initially be entered as participant instead.

## 8.2.7 Collapse or expand user list

Click on the left arrow button above the user list to collapse it. The list will be displayed with a smaller width, showing only the user images stored in the associated employee addresses.

Click on the button again to display the user list with full width again, showing user images, names and descriptions.

 Click this to collapse or expand the user list.

## 8.3 Timeline view in the Web Client

The following sections briefly outline the availability, visualization and features of the **Timeline view**, which is available in CAS genesisWorld Web with Project.

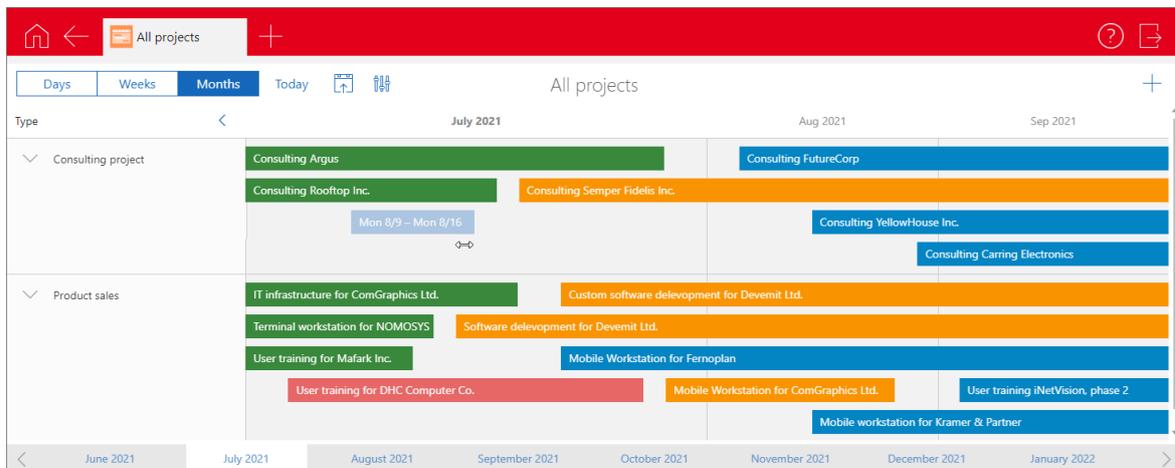
- 8.3.1 Licensing (page 181)
- 8.3.2 General (page 181)
- 8.3.3 Options (page 182)
- 8.3.4 Interactions (page 183)

### 8.3.1 Licensing

When Report, Project or Helpdesk is licensed, the **Timeline view** is available in the Web Client (for Project and Helpdesk, activation in the Mangement Console isn't required).

### 8.3.2 General

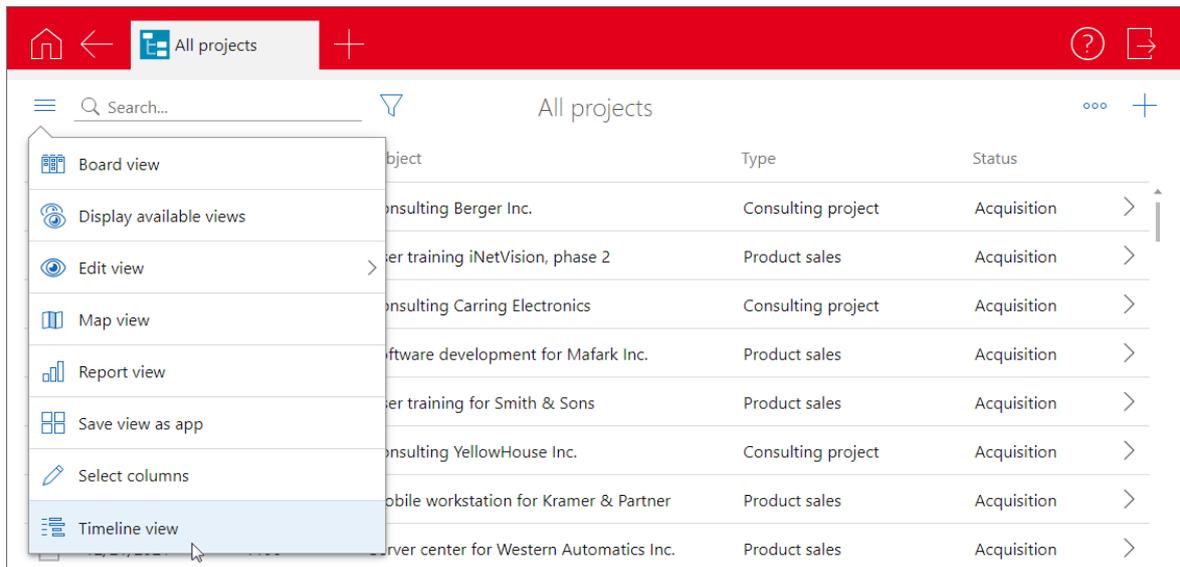
The **Timeline view** displays the chronological order of data records with a start and finish.



With either of the associated licenses, you may open the view out of saved list views for any type of data records with a start and finish.

Other than the standard data records type with a start and finish in CAS genesisWorld, the view will display any data record type with date fields named **START\_DT** and **END\_DT**.

- ✓ To open a **Timeline view** for the data records displayed in a saved list view, click on the three horizontal bar at the top left to open the view menu and select **Timeline view**.



## Notes

This feature is only available for saved list views listed under **Views** in the associated app. It isn't available for combined list views, list views with a link filter or list views that are currently filtered via the **Search...** field.

The opened view always includes all data records from the list view. Selecting data records via the checkboxes in the first column has no effect.

All settings will be restored when next opening the view. Configurations are saved per list view and user, such that other users can't overwrite your view settings.

### 8.3.3 Options

In the **Timeline view**, you have the following options.

- **Interval: Days, Weeks or Months.**
- **Start date: Today**, selection in the calendar or via the time bar below the view.
- **Settings**
  - **Visibility of weekends** (Visible/Not visible).
  - **Working hours to be displayed** (start and finish for each day).
  - **Number of columns** in day, week and month view.
  - **Use field for the grouping.**
  - **Use field for the color classification** and select colors for field values.

### 8.3.4 Interactions

The **Timeline view** supports the following interactions.

- **Open data record** via left-click on a bar.
- **Change start and/or finish** via drag-and-drop.
- **Create data records** with the plus button or by selecting a period with the mouse while holding the left mouse button. Not supported for all data record types.

## 8.4 Board view in the Web Client

The following sections briefly outline the availability, visualization and features of the **Board view**, which is available in CAS genesisWorld Web with Project.

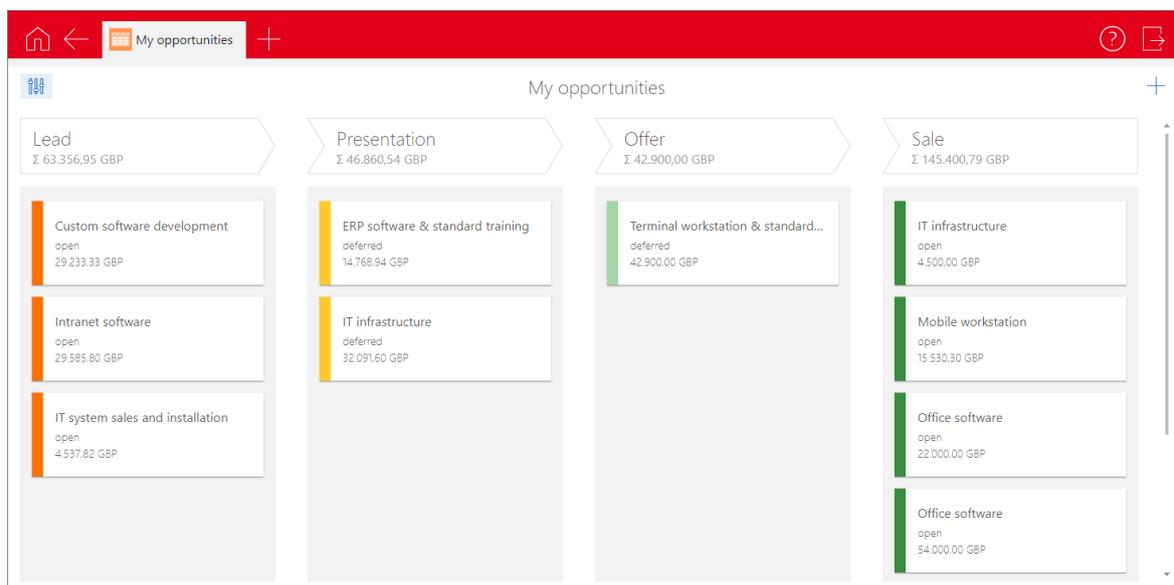
- 8.4.1 Licensing (page 184)
- 8.4.2 General (page 184)
- 8.4.3 Settings (page 185)
- 8.4.4 Interactions (page 186)

### 8.4.1 Licensing

When Report, Project or Helpdesk is licensed, the **Board view** is available in the Web Client (for Project and Helpdesk, activation in the Management Console isn't required).

### 8.4.2 General

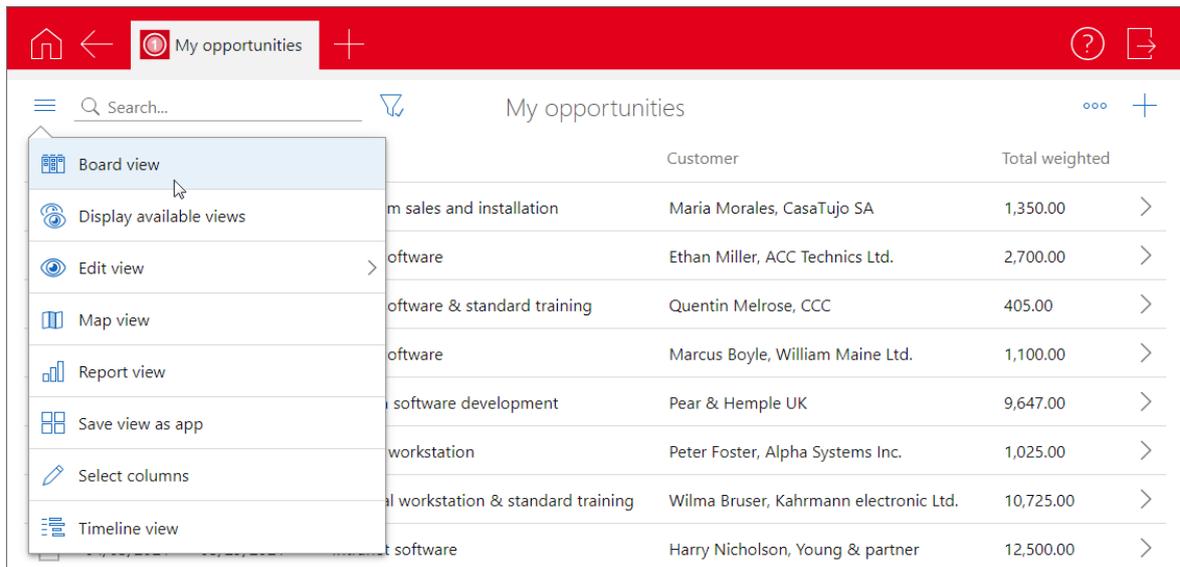
The **Board view** displays the grouping of data records by input help items of a field.



With either of the associated licenses, you may open the view out of saved list views for data records that have at least one field with input help items.

The view is available for both standard and custom data record types.

- ✓ To open a **Board view** for the data records displayed in a saved list view, click on the three horizontal bar at the top left to open the view menu and select **Board view**.



## Notes

This feature is only available for saved list views listed under **Views** in the associated app. It isn't available for combined list views, list views with a link filter or list views that are currently filtered via the **Search...** field.

The opened view always includes all data records from the list view. Selecting data records via the checkboxes in the first column has no effect.

Only assignments of field values that are available as input help items will be displayed.

Data records with field values which are not or no longer available as input help items will be displayed as **Not assigned**.

All settings will be restored when next opening the view. Configurations are saved per list view and user, such that other users can't overwrite your view settings.

### 8.4.3 Settings

The following **Settings** are available for the **Board view**.

- **Use the following field for grouping:** Select here the field whose values will be displayed as columns for grouping the data records.
  - **Use the following type for grouping by Status:** If you select the **Status** field for grouping and the status depends on the type, status assignments will only be displayed for a specific type, which you select here in this case.
 

Items with other values in the **Type** field will not be displayed in this case.
- **Display the following column values of the grouping:** Display or hide columns for specific field values here.

- **Use the following field for the sorting:** Select here the sorting field for records within a column. In addition to fields of the displayed data record type, you may sort by the first or second row as defined for that data record type in the App Designer with the **1. row** and **2. row** items.

Sorting by the second row is always supported regardless of whether it is actually displayed in the board view (see **Also display the following field on the card**).

- **Use the following field for the sum row:** Select the number of cards or a field to display as sum in the header row here.
- **Offer currency fields in the base currency:** When you select a currency field for the sum row (e.g., **Total** for opportunities), this option will be available for converting data records with foreign currencies to your base currency and summing up column totals.

This requires entering conversion rates from the base currency to the currencies of all displayed data records in the **Miscellaneous** area of the Management Console under **Currencies** (see "9.2.1 Currencies" on page 189).

## Note

This feature isn't supported for fields of the **money** data type.

Such fields will always be displayed in the base currency.

- **Also display the following field on the card:** The first row on each card can't be configured and is defined by the associated App Designer setting for the displayed data record type. For the second row, you may select between the App Designer configuration (default setting **2. row**) and fields of the data record type.
- **Use the following field for the color classification:** Select a color classification field here. This can be the grouping field or another field with input help items. Once you have selected a field, you can also select colors for individual field values.
- **Use the following field for the user picture:** Select a user field here to display the associated picture on each card.

## 8.4.4 Interactions

The **Board view** supports the following interactions.

- **Open radial menu** by right-clicking on a card.
- **Change field value (group)** by dragging a card to another column and dropping it.
- **Create data records** by clicking on the plus button.

## 9 Management Console settings

---

The following sections describe the Management Console settings for the Project module.

- 9.1 Settings in the Easy Invoice area (page 187)
- 9.2 Settings in the Miscellaneous area (page 189)
- 9.3 Settings in the Project area (page 194)
- 9.4 Settings in the Time record area (page 210)
- 9.5 Settings in the User Management area (page 218)

### 9.1 Settings in the Easy Invoice area

Enter the following settings in the **Easy Invoice** area for orders (see "2.3.4 Assigning orders (with Easy Invoice)" on page 27) and vendor credit notes (see "7.8.8 Creating vendor credits (with Easy Invoice)" on page 159).

- 9.1.1 Receipt types for orders (page 187)
- 9.1.2 Vendor credit settings (page 188)

#### 9.1.1 Receipt types for orders

Create one or more receipt types for orders.

- ✓ Create the receipt types under **General** in the **Overview of receipt types**.

- ✓ Select **0** as **Statistic factor** to enable the **Receipt type is order** option.
- ✓ The receipt types will be available in the Desktop Client after assigning a number range to them under **Number assignment**.

## 9.1.2 Vendor credit settings

Enter the following settings to create vendor credits.

- ✓ In the **Easy Invoice** area of the Management Console under **General > Overview of receipt types**, you can create one or more receipt types for vendor credits:

- ✓ Select **-1** as **Statistic factor** to enable the **Receipt type is a vendor credit** option.
- ✓ A separate print template is available for vendor credits.
- ✓ Select one product each for time records and expenses in the lower section under **Product default values for vendor credits (preparation for billing)**:

Receipt type	Statistic factor	Receipt type requires exchange rate	Receipt type for cancellation	Print template
Offer	0	No		Easy Invoice print template
Order	0	No		Easy Invoice print template
Credit note	-1	No		Easy Invoice print template
Vendor credit	-1	No		Easy Invoice printing template for vendor credits
Invoice	1	No	Cancellation	Easy Invoice print template with work report
Cancellation	-1	No		Easy Invoice print template

Taxation	Rate (%)	Invoice text	Tax type requires VAT ID
International	0	Service is not liable for value-added tax.	No
National (reduced)	7	Sales tax national reduced 7.00%	No
National (normal)	19		No

Data record type	Product
Time records	1000001, Time records (days)
Expenses	1000002, Expenses

- ✓ The feature for creating vendor credits will be available in the Desktop Client after assigning a number range to the receipt type under **Number assignment**.

## 9.2 Settings in the Miscellaneous area

The following sections describe the Project module settings in the **Miscellaneous** area:

- 9.2.1 Currencies (page 189)
- 9.2.2 Dashboards (page 190)
- 9.2.3 Documents (page 191)
- 9.2.4 Products (page 192)

### 9.2.1 Currencies

You may enter currencies in the **Miscellaneous** area, under **Currencies**.

All list items will be available for selection in all currency fields in CAS genesisWorld.

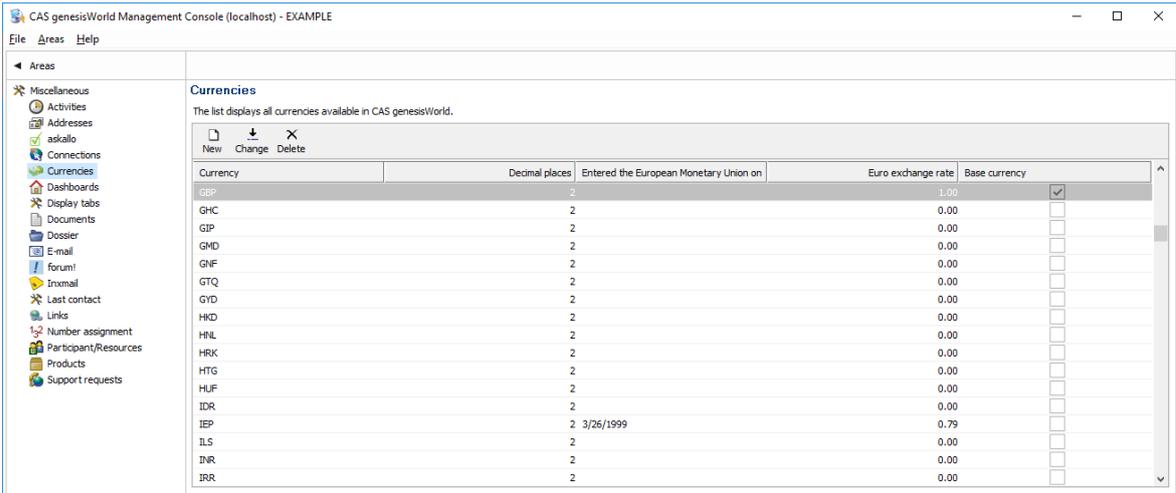
You also determine the system's **Base currency** here.

This is the presetting for currency fields in CAS genesisWorld.

To convert foreign currencies to the base currency in reports, in formula fields and in board views in CAS genesisWorld Web, enter conversion rates here.

Enter the conversion rate from the base currency to any foreign currency to convert as **Exchange ratio Euro to Currency**, regardless of which currency you are using as base currency. For example, if you are using GBP as base currency and wish to convert CHF, edit CHF and enter the conversion rate for GBP to CHF (e.g., if 1 GBP = 1.2 CHF, enter 1.2).

For the base currency itself, enter 1 as **Exchange ratio Euro to Currency**.



Currency	Decimal places	Entered the European Monetary Union on	Euro exchange rate	Base currency
GBP	2		1.00	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
GHC	2		0.00	<input type="checkbox"/>
GIP	2		0.00	<input type="checkbox"/>
GMD	2		0.00	<input type="checkbox"/>
GNF	2		0.00	<input type="checkbox"/>
GTQ	2		0.00	<input type="checkbox"/>
GYD	2		0.00	<input type="checkbox"/>
HKD	2		0.00	<input type="checkbox"/>
HNL	2		0.00	<input type="checkbox"/>
HRK	2		0.00	<input type="checkbox"/>
HTG	2		0.00	<input type="checkbox"/>
HUF	2		0.00	<input type="checkbox"/>
IDR	2		0.00	<input type="checkbox"/>
IEP	2	3/26/1999	0.79	<input type="checkbox"/>
ILS	2		0.00	<input type="checkbox"/>
INR	2		0.00	<input type="checkbox"/>
IRR	2		0.00	<input type="checkbox"/>

Please consider the following regarding the **Maintain different prices for products** option under **Miscellaneous > Products**:

- With this option, you can no longer change the **Base currency**.
- With this option, you can assign a **Default currency** other than the base currency to individual users (see "9.5 Settings in the User Management area" on page 218).

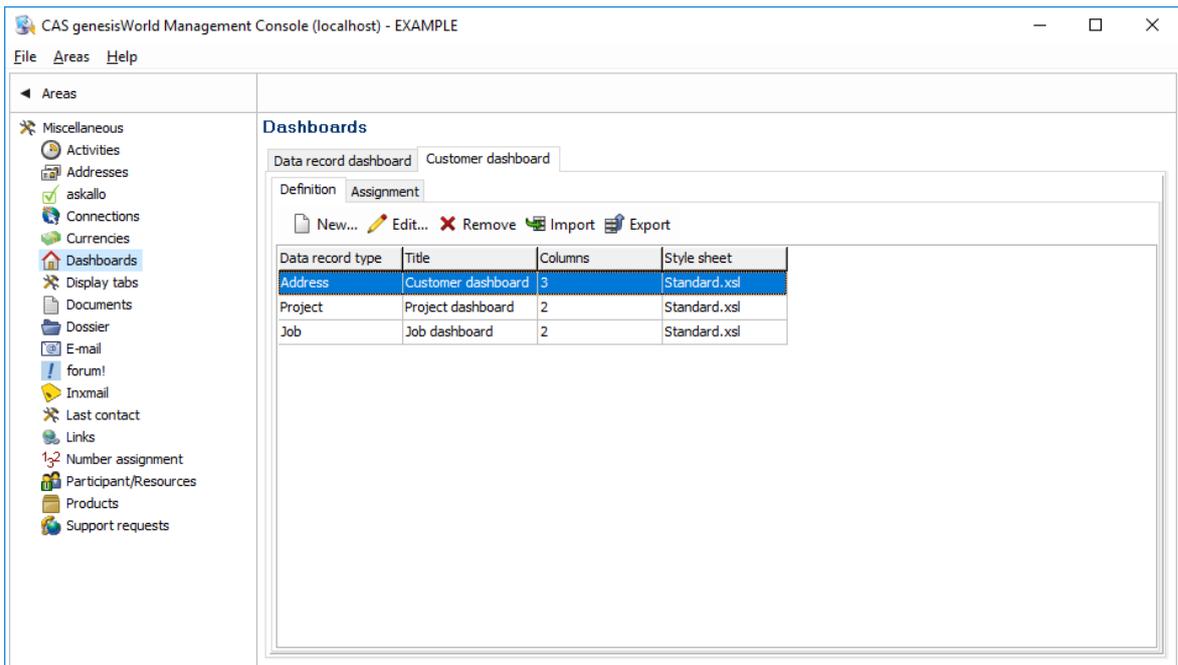
## 9.2.2 Dashboards

Use customer dashboard reports to process and clarify information from data records.

You can find the associated configuration in the **Miscellaneous** area of the Management Console, under **Dashboards > Customer dashboard**.

In the **Definition** tab, you create customer dashboard definitions.

In the **Assignment** tab, you assign your definitions to the desired data record windows.



For details about the possibilities and configuration of customer dashboards, see the Report module user guide.

## 9.2.3 Documents

In the **Miscellaneous** area of the Management Console, under **Documents**, you enter settings for field variables available in Microsoft Word.

CAS genesisWorld Management Console (localhost) - EXAMPLE

File Areas Help

Areas

- Miscellaneous
- Activities
- Addresses
- askallo
- Connections
- Currencies
- Dashboards
- Display tabs
- Documents**
- Dossier
- E-mail
- forum!
- Inxmail
- Last contact
- Links
- Number assignment
- Participant/Resources
- Products
- Support requests

### Documents

**Maximum size of archive files**

Value 0 means that all archive files are stored in the Document Archive.

250 Mb

**Update archive files**

The CAS genesisWorld Desktop client can automatically transfer archive files if they are saved in a third-party application (e.g. Microsoft Word). The previously saved file will then be overwritten.

Update archive files automatically

If archive files are automatically updated and if the function for the creation of automatic versions is activated, a new version of the archive file is created in the Desktop client each time you save the file.

Auto comment: Automatische Version

**Mail merge field for document validity in quotes**

The document validity can be inserted as mail merge field for offers. Define, how many years, months or days an offer is to be valid as of the current date.

Document validity: 0 year(s) 0 month(s) 60 day(s)

Reschedule the validity date to the next possible day for:

- Saturday
- Sunday
- Public holiday

Adopt formatted notes from order items

Transfer offer items as field variable to Microsoft Word for the following entries in the "Type" field of the "Document" data record type.

- General
- Quote
- Order
- FAQ
- Credit note
- Vendor credit
- Marketing

**Editing of managed documents**

During the document management the documents can be only edited by the persons for editing and the quality management. If examiner and the persons for release should edit managed documents too, please activate the option.

Allow reviewers and approvers the editing of documents

**Notifications regarding document life cycle**

Every user can define the events on which he wants to be notified. You as administrator can define if user should be always notified in the document management, independent their settings.

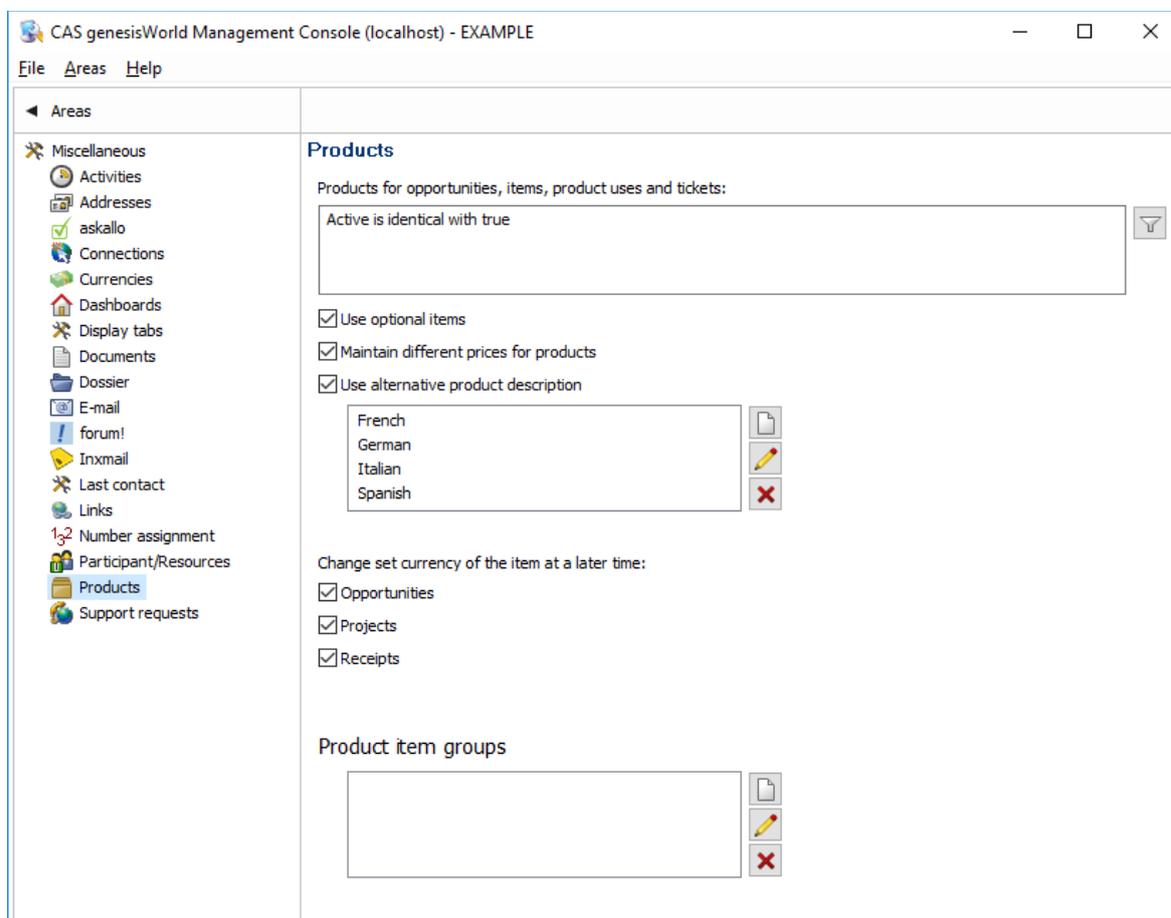
Always notify upon events in the document life cycle

Changes on these settings take only affect after a restart of the application server.

- **Document validity:** When editing a document in Microsoft Word, the validity period entered here, added to the current date, yields the due date available as a field variable in the Microsoft Word add-in under **Opportunity fields > Document validity**. The due date will be postponed if it coincides with one of the days defined as exceptions.
- **Transfer offer items [...]:** Select the document types for which project items should be available in Microsoft Word here (see "2.4 Creating documents for items" on page 33).

## 9.2.4 Products

In the **Miscellaneous** area, under **Products**, you enter settings for products, project item and projects.



The following settings on this page relate to Project features:

- **Products for opportunities, items, product uses and tickets:** Here you can see and change the product filter for opportunity product items, project items, receipt items (with Easy Invoice) as well as product uses and tickets (with Helpdesk).

With the default filter, all products selected as **Active** will be available.

- **Maintain different prices for products:** By default, you may only enter exactly one sales and purchase price in exactly one currency for each product. Here you activate or deactivate the entry of sales and purchase prices for products in different currencies.

The price information you enter for a product and currency will automatically be adopted to opportunity, project and receipt items (with Easy Invoice) in which you select that product and currency.

With this setting, you may also select a default currency for each user which will be used instead of the base currency (see "9.5 Settings in the User Management area" on page 218).

- **Use alternative product description:** Here you activate or deactivate the entry of alternative descriptions and quantity units for products.

Each list item represents an additional description and quantity unit. Additionally, the **Standard** item (default description and quantity unit) is always available.

When editing an opportunity, project or receipt item (with Easy Invoice), if you select a product for which alternative descriptions and quantity units have been entered, they will be available for selection in the item.

With this setting, you may also select a default description and for each user (see "9.5 Settings in the User Management area" on page 218).

- **Change set currency of the item at a later time:** Here you determine whether the currency of an existing opportunity, project or receipt (with Easy Invoice) can be changed via the **Tools** menu. When changing the currency, you may retain prices, set the to zero or enter a conversion rate.
- **Product item groups:** Here you can enter input helps for product item group names in all client languages.

Whenever a user creates a product item group for an opportunity or for a receipt (with Easy Invoice), any group names entered here will be available for selection.

## 9.3 Settings in the Project area

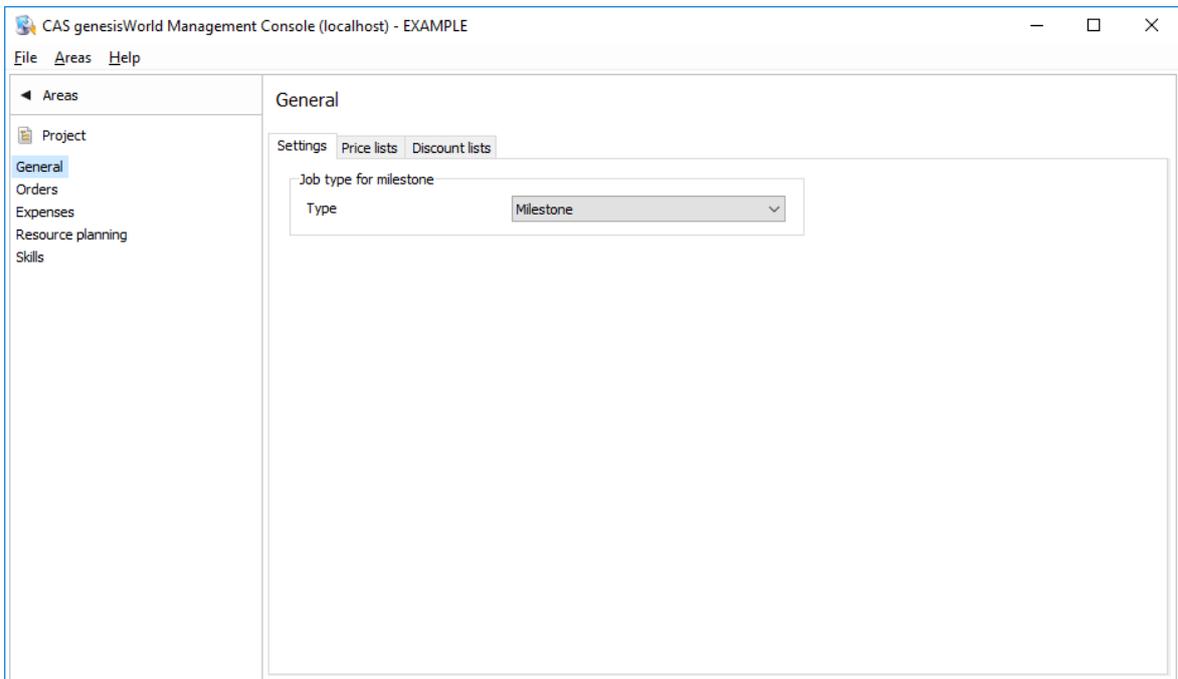
The following sections describe the settings in the **Project** area.

- 9.3.1 General (page 194)
- 9.3.2 Orders (page 197)
- 9.3.3 Expenses (page 200)
- 9.3.4 Resource planning (page 204)
- 9.3.5 Skills (page 208)

### 9.3.1 General

- Settings (page 194)
- Price lists and Discount Lists (page 195)

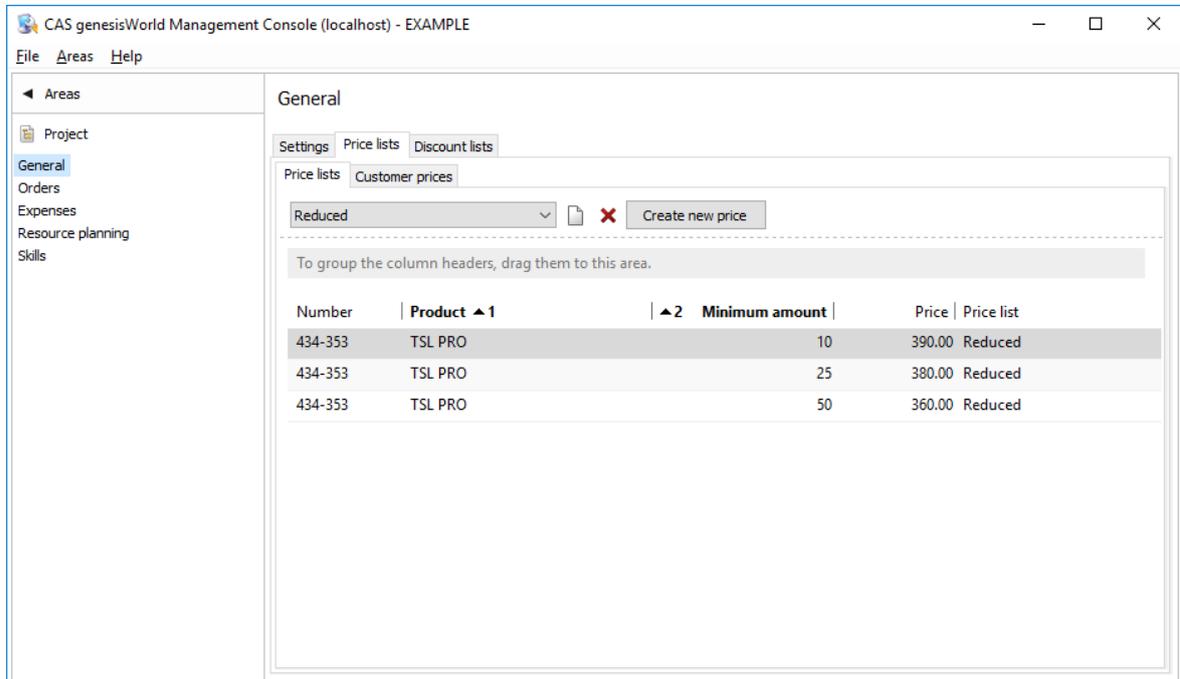
## Settings



- **Job type for Milestones:** Here you select the job type for milestones.

## Price lists and Discount Lists

In the **Price lists** and **Discount lists** tabs, you define price lists and discount lists. You assign them to customers in the **Details** tab of the data record window for addresses.



- **Price lists:** In a price list, you enter reduced prices for certain products. The prices may be scaled by minimum amount. In a price list there may therefore be multiple prices with different minimum amounts for the same product.
- **Discount lists:** In a discount list, you specify discount proportions for certain products. Like prices discounts may be scaled by minimum amount.
- 📄 **Create new price list or discount list:** Create a new price list or discount list. Once you have named the list it will be selected and displayed.
- ✖ **Delete price list or discount list:** Delete the price or discount list selected in the menu.
- **Create new price or discount:** Create a new price or discount in the selected list.

For the price, you specify a product, minimum amount, price and currency.

For the discount, you specify a product, minimum amount and discount in percent.

## Note

Only products matching the associated filter will be found.

By default, these are all products for which the **Active** option has been selected in the **General** tab. You can change the associated filter condition in the Management Console under **Miscellaneous > Products** (see "9.2.4 Products" on page 192).

## 9.3.2 Orders

- Items for jobs (page 197)
- Items for appointments (page 198)

### Items for jobs

Here you configure the creation of jobs for items (see "**Create**" on page 23).

Type	Product	Unit
Acquisition		Days
Administration		Days
Conception	P43, Conception	Days
Consulting	P40, Consulting	Hours
Documentation		Days
Milestone		Days
Programming	P45, Development	Days
Project management	P48, Project management	Hours
Service	P38, IT Service	Days
Ticket		Days
Training	P50, User training	Days

You may assign multiple products to each job type and a different unit to each product.

- The **New creation** setting determines whether jobs created for an item adopt its date as end or start date. The job's duration and time budget of associated resource plans both depend on the **Quantity** specified in the item and the **Unit** entered here for the associated product. With **Hours**, jobs will last one full day per started person day.
- With the **Add number to subject** option, when a job is created for an item, the item's number is transferred along with its description to the job's subject.

 **Enter products:** Here you select products in the **Search** window to assign them to the type. When you click **Link & Close**, all selected products will be entered, potentially overwriting the previous selection. Then select the **Unit** for the associated jobs and resource plans, **Days** or **Hours**.

 **Insert product row:** Here you insert an empty product row.

 **Open product:** Here you open the product's data record window.

 **Delete assignment:** Here you remove the product assignment in this row.

## Items for appointments

Here you configure the creation of appointments for items (see "**Create**" on page 23).

The screenshot shows the 'Orders' configuration page in the 'Items for appointments' tab. The page is divided into several sections:

- Appointment**: Contains checkboxes for 'Automatically create an item when saving, if a type with an assigned product is selected and no item was entered' and 'On deleting objects delete linked item'. Below these is a section for 'Automatically update item' with a list of checkboxes: 'Refresh date', 'Refresh duration', 'Refresh unit', 'Refresh description', 'Refresh project link', and 'Refresh product link'.
- New creation**: Contains radio buttons for 'Adopt item date as end date' (selected) and 'Adopt item date as start date', and a checkbox for 'Add number to subject'.
- Item**: Contains a checkbox for 'Add participants to the description of the item'.
- Table**: A table with columns 'Type', 'Product', and 'Unit'. The 'Type' column lists various appointment types. The 'Product' column contains text boxes with icons for opening, refreshing, and deleting. The 'Unit' column contains dropdown menus for selecting the duration unit.

Type	Product	Unit
Acquisition		
Administration		
Consulting	P40, Consulting	Hours
Installation	P38, IT Service	Days
Project management	P48, Project management	Hours
Service	P38, IT Service	Days
Training	P50, User training	Days

You may assign exactly one product to each appointment type.

**Enter product:** Here you assign a product to the type in the **Search** window

Then select the **Unit** for the duration of associated appointments, **Days** or **Hours**.

**Open product:** Here you open the product's data record window.

**Delete assignment:** Here you remove the product assignment in this row.

- With the **Automatically create an item when saving [...]** option, when an appointment of a type to which a product has been assigned here is saved, an item for the product will automatically be created in the appointment's primary project.

If an appointment has no primary project or an item has already been assigned to it, it will not be affected by this setting.

- If the **On deleting objects delete linked item** option is selected, the item associated with an appointment will be deleted automatically when you delete the appointment.
- Under **Refresh item automatically**, you select fields and links of appointments that should automatically be updated in associated items. When an appointment is saved, you are first asked to confirm the transfer of the changes to the item.
  - With the **Refresh date** option, an item's date is updated when its associated appointment's start or end date is changed.

- With the **Refresh duration** option, an item's quantity of billable hours or days is updated when its associated appointment's duration is changed.
- With the **Refresh measurement** option, an item's quantity unit is updated when a type with another quantity unit is selected in its associated appointment.
- With the **Refresh description** option, an item's description is updated when its associated appointment's subject is changed. With the **Add participants to the description of the item** setting, the description is also updated when the appointment's participants change.
- With the **Refresh project link** option, an item will be removed from its former primary project and entered in the new one when its associated appointment's primary project is changed.
- With the **Refresh product link** option, an item's product link is updated when a type with another product is selected in its associated appointment.
- The **New creation** setting determines whether, when an appointment is created for an item, the item's date will be adopted as the new appointment's start or end date. The appointment's duration depends on the **Quantity** specified in the item and the **Unit** entered here for the associated product.
- With the **Add number to subject** option, when an appointment is created for an item in the **Order** tab of the data record window for projects, each item's number is transferred along with its description to the associated appointment's subject.
- With the **Add participants to the description of the item** option, when items are manually or automatically created for an appointment, the appointment's participants are transferred to the description of the associated item.

### 9.3.3 Expenses

- General (page 200)
- License plate number (page 203)

#### General

- **Select expenses types:** Here you can see and change the types for per diem costs, lump sums and travel costs. When one of these types is selected in the data record window for expenses, that window displays the fields and features for the selected type. When another type is selected, the data record window for expenses displays the fields and features for expense receipts.
- **Costs per km (travel costs):** Here you can see and change the presets for the internal and external kilometer prices for travel cost billing.
- **Settings for per diem costs:** Here you determine whether you wish to enter per diem costs manually or have them calculated automatically.

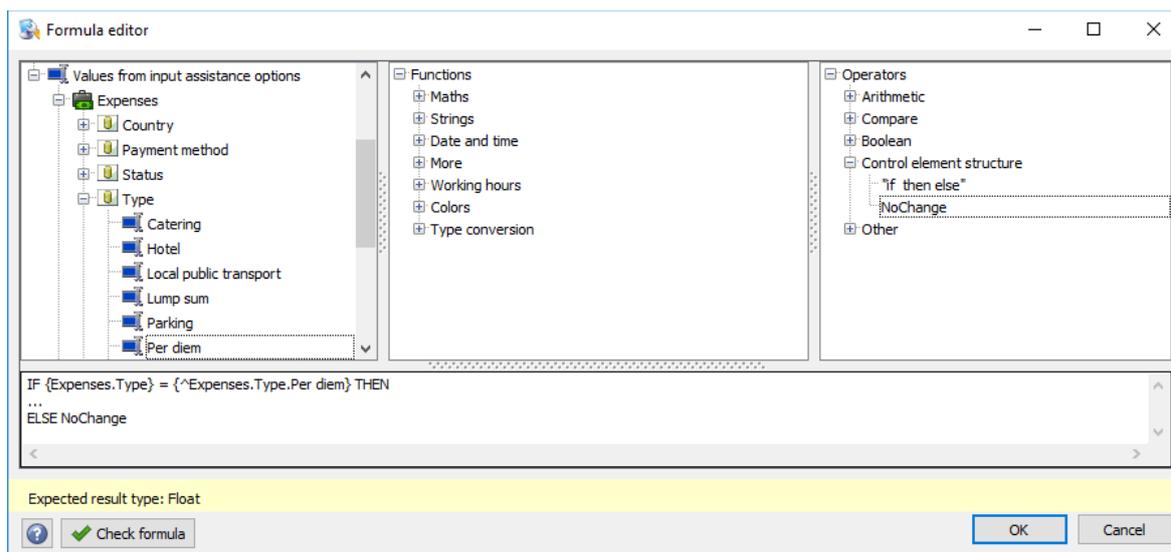
Please note that the default automatic calculation without formulas only applies to the German rules and regulations.

For per diem costs valid in other countries, we suggest you calculate them via formulas (**Preallocate per diem costs**, requires the Form Designer module) or enter them manually (**Always manually enter per diem costs** option).

- **Preallocate per diem costs (requires the Form Designer module):** Per diem costs will be calculated via formulas. This enables the **Subsistence allowance**, **Net costs**

and **Turnover** fields as targets for formula fields in the **Form Designer** area of the Management Console. For per diem costs, each of these fields will then be read-only and will default to zero if you don't enter a formula for it.

Please note that formulas for these fields will be valid for all expense types unless you restrict them to per diem costs using an **IF** junction. With **NoChange** in the **ELSE** branch, the default behavior applies for the other types.



- **Always manually enter per diem costs:** Per diem costs won't be calculated automatically. The **Overnight stay**, **Subsistence allowance**, **Net costs** and **Turnover** fields may be edited manually.
- **Permit calculation per data record:** Per diem costs will initially be calculated automatically based on the rules and rates valid in Germany. With the **Calculate manually** option selected in the associated data record window, you may edit the **Overnight stay**, **Subsistence allowance**, **Net costs** and **Turnover** fields manually.
- **Always automatically calculate per diem costs:** Per diem costs will always be calculated automatically based on the rules and rates valid in Germany. They can't be edited manually.
- **Country settings for per diem costs:** Specify here the default setting for the **Country** field in per diem costs (**Default country for New**). Additionally, you can view and modify here the rates for per diem costs by country or region. You may also specify different deduction rates for the breakfast here (20%) as well as for the lunch and dinner (40% each). The values follow the rates provided by the German legislator (see "Notes on the automatic calculation of per diem costs" on page 115).
  - In the default setting, the current expense rates are displayed here. Select the desired **Year** to edit earlier expense rates.
  - Select a **Country** or region to display and edit the associated values.
  - Add countries and regions via the input help for the **Country** field of expenses in the **Database** area. Countries must be spelled as entered in the input help for the

**Country** field of addresses. To update regions, the input help for the **Country** field of expenses must be international and provide German translations for all regions to update, spelled like in the xml file under `Expenses` in the client directory. New countries and regions will be created without initial expense rates.

- **Set the daily rates for all countries to default values:** Select **Germany** under **Default country for New** and click on the button with the green arrow next to **Year** in order to enter the expense rates for the selected year for all countries and regions available as input helps for the **Country** expense field.

The expense rates are taken from the associated xml file for the current year which must exist under `Expenses` in the client directory or it must already be available online and the application server must have an internet connection.

After the update, you will receive a report about how many countries and regions were updated and, if applicable, which countries and regions could not be updated.

- ⊕ **Add new year:** Here you create expense rates for a new year.

Expense rates will be added for all countries and regions available in the input help for the **Country** expense field. To update regions, the input assistance for this field must be international and a German translation must be provided for each region that should be updated with the same spelling as used in the xml file under `Expenses` in the client directory.

This file is updated with the current expense rates and supplied with the CAS genesisWorld client installation with the next software update as soon as new rates have been published by the legislator. The xml file with the current expense rates will also be made available online and can be accessed via the Management Console. To do this, the application server requires an internet connection.

When clicking on the **Add new year** button, current expense rates will first be looked for under `Expenses` in the client directory.

**Use lump sum from file:** If the current rates are already supplied as a client file, you can apply them here.

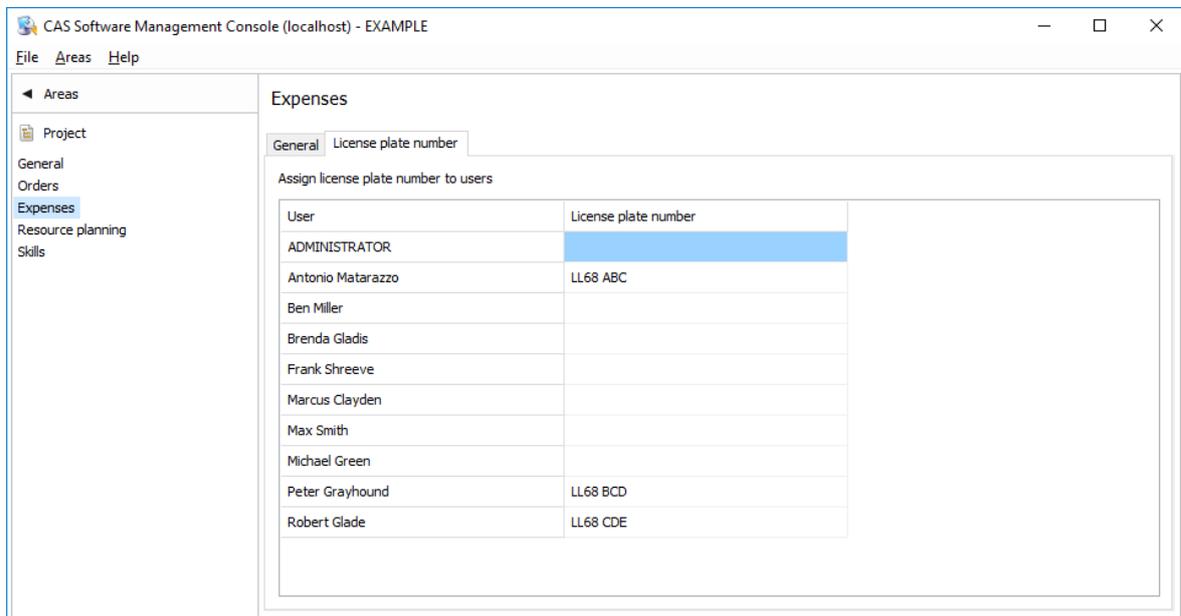
**Search online for current values:** Here you check whether expense rates for the selected year are available online. In this case, you may apply them.

**Use lump sum from previous year:** Here you copy the rates of the previous year for the selected year.

**Create without lump sum:** Here you create zero rates for the selected year.

When applying expense rates from an xml file or via the internet, you will receive a report about how many countries and regions were updated and, if applicable, which countries and regions could not be updated.

## License plate number



Here you assign vehicle license plate numbers to users or reset the assignment by selecting the empty option.

When a user associated with a vehicle license number creates a new travel cost record, the license number selected here will be written in the **Vehicle** field of the data record window for expenses.

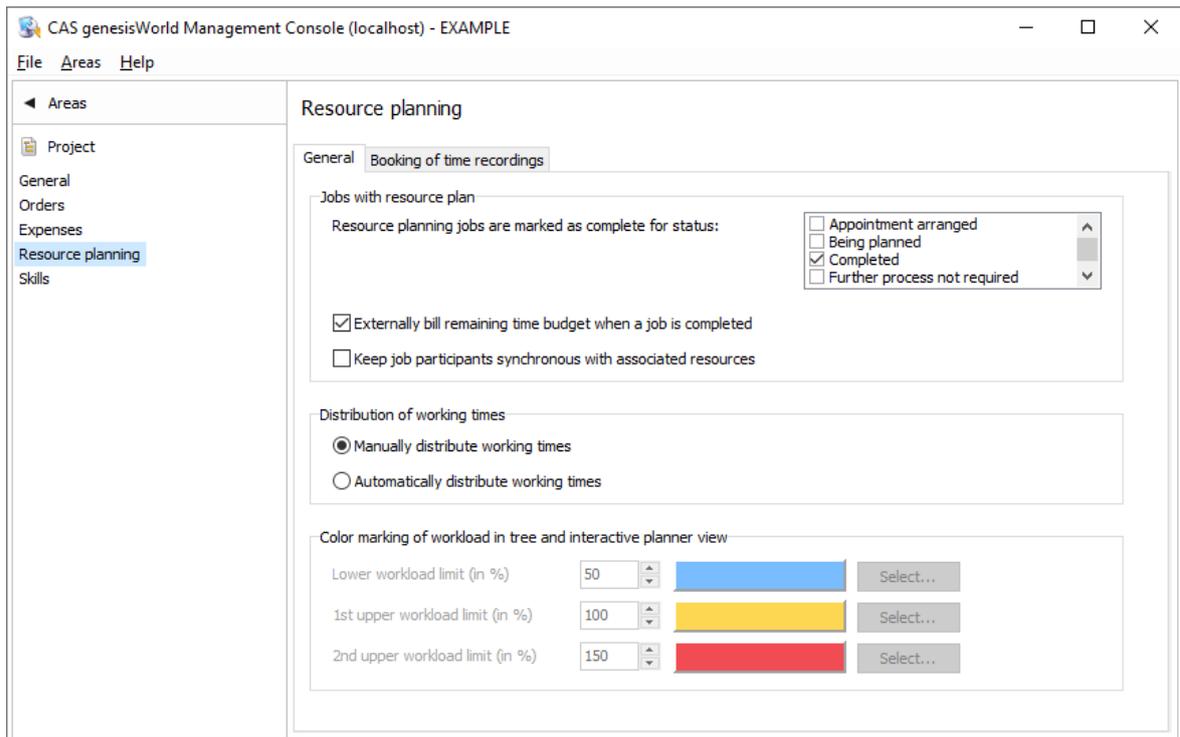
You must first store the desired license numbers as input helps for the expenses field **Vehicle** in the **Database** area.

Then associate the license plate numbers with the desired users here.

## 9.3.4 Resource planning

- General (page 204)
- Booking of time recordings (page 206)

### General



- **Resource planning jobs are marked as complete for status:** Select here one or more status options to mark a resource planning job as complete, setting the completion grade to 100% and the remaining ETC in all associated resource plans to null.
- **Externally bill remaining time budget when completing a job:** Here you specify whether remaining time budget will automatically be added to the **Charged** field in the last time record for the resource plan when completing a job.
- **Keep job participants synchronous with associated resources:** With this setting, when a job with resource plans is saved, the job's participants will be overwritten with the resource plans' participants.
- **Distribution of working times:** With the optional database update for version x11.1.7, in addition to the automatic distribution, a manual planning mode is now also available.

In x12 and more recent versions, this feature is always available without an additional database update. Databases created with version x11.1.7 or a more recent version use the manual distribution by default. For existing customers, the automatic distribution is selected by default, such that nothing changes.

The manual mode is available in the **Resource planning** app in the Web Client after activating it in the Management Console and restarting the Application Server.

The manual mode initially uses the same automatic distribution for workloads of new resource plans as the automatic mode. The manual planning is activated by entering values in the **Resource planning** app in the Web Client.

Section „5.4 Resource planning basics“ on page 57 describes differences between the automatic and manual planning.

Section „5.6 Resource planning in the Web Client“ on page 71 describes the manual planning in the Web Client.

With the manual mode, the resource planning feature in the Desktop Client's tree view (displaying and editing of ETC) is no longer available.

Please note that switching to the automatic mode will delete any detailed planning you have already entered. The **ETC** total of each resource plan will still be retained.

- **Color marking of workload:** In the automatic mode, you define here a lower limit and two upper limits for employees' workloads. They will be highlighted in the tree view and in the interactive planner view.

The following ranges of values are admissible:

- **Lower workload limit:** 0% – 100%
- **1st upper workload limit:** 50% – 200%
- **2nd upper workload limit:** 100% – 300%

## Booking of time recordings

The screenshot shows the 'Resource planning' settings in the 'CAS genesisWorld Management Console'. The 'Booking of time recordings' tab is active. The settings are as follows:

- Time recording to job with resource plan:**
  - Time recording mask
    - Display status and completion grade of the job and booking data of the resource plan in time record mask
  - Overbooking of resource plan:**
    - Overbooking degree in % (0)
    - Display fields for ETC and comment in the time record and in the resource plan
    - Always permit overbooking
- Booking settings for all time recording types:**

Type	Accounting	External Billing
Acquisition	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Neutral for accounting, <input type="radio"/> Relevant for accounting, <input type="radio"/> Only for resource planning	<input type="checkbox"/> Bill working time externally (automatically set Charged to Actual if Time budget remains.)
Administration	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Neutral for accounting, <input type="radio"/> Relevant for accounting, <input type="radio"/> Only for resource planning	<input type="checkbox"/> Bill working time externally (automatically set Charged to Actual if Time budget remains.)
Conception	<input type="radio"/> Neutral for accounting, <input type="radio"/> Relevant for accounting, <input checked="" type="radio"/> Only for resource planning	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Bill working time externally (automatically set Charged to Actual if Time budget remains.)
Consulting	<input type="radio"/> Neutral for accounting, <input checked="" type="radio"/> Relevant for accounting, <input type="radio"/> Only for resource planning	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Bill working time externally (automatically set Charged to Actual if Time budget remains.)

### ■ Time recording to job with resource plan

- **Time recording mask:** The **Display status and completion grade of the job and booking data of the resource plan in time record mask** option controls whether data from the associated job and the resource plan will be displayed when time is recorded for a resource plan.
- **Overbooking of resource plan:** Here you specify if and to what extent the overbooking of resource plans is permissible without requiring additional ETC to be cleared (see "The **Overbooking check**" on page 93).

By default, the overbooking check is active with the overbooking degree set to 0%, not permitting overbooking. Enter a value above zero to allow limited overbooking. Select the **Always permit overbooking** option to disable the overbooking check.

The overbooking degree specifies by how many percent of the **Time budget** a resource plan's **Actual** value may exceed the **Time budget** due to a time record in order to save that time record (e.g., time budget 4 hours, permissible overbooking 50% => time records relevant for accounting are possible as long as the resource plan's **Actual** value doesn't exceed 150% of the **Time budget**, i.e., 6 hours).

Regardless of the **Actual** and **Time budget** values in a resource plan, it is always possible to record at least the cleared remaining working time **ETC** for it.

- **Display fields for ETC and comment in the time record and in the resource plan:** When the overbooking check is active, you specify here whether employees may enter an estimate that differs from the **ETC** value and a reason for the deviation when recording time for a resource plan or in the resource plan itself.

With the other right **Resource planning**, the employee's superior can adopt the estimate as the resource plan's **ETC** in the resource plan or in the **Resources and items** tab of the associated job. When he or she does, the **ETC** field's previous value will be overwritten.

When the overbooking check is active and a resource plan is overbooked, the **Actual** value of any additional time records for this resource plan may not exceed the resource plan's **ETC** value. To raise the **ETC** value in a resource plan, clearing additional working time, the other right **Resource planning** is always required, even if the estimate has been deactivated.

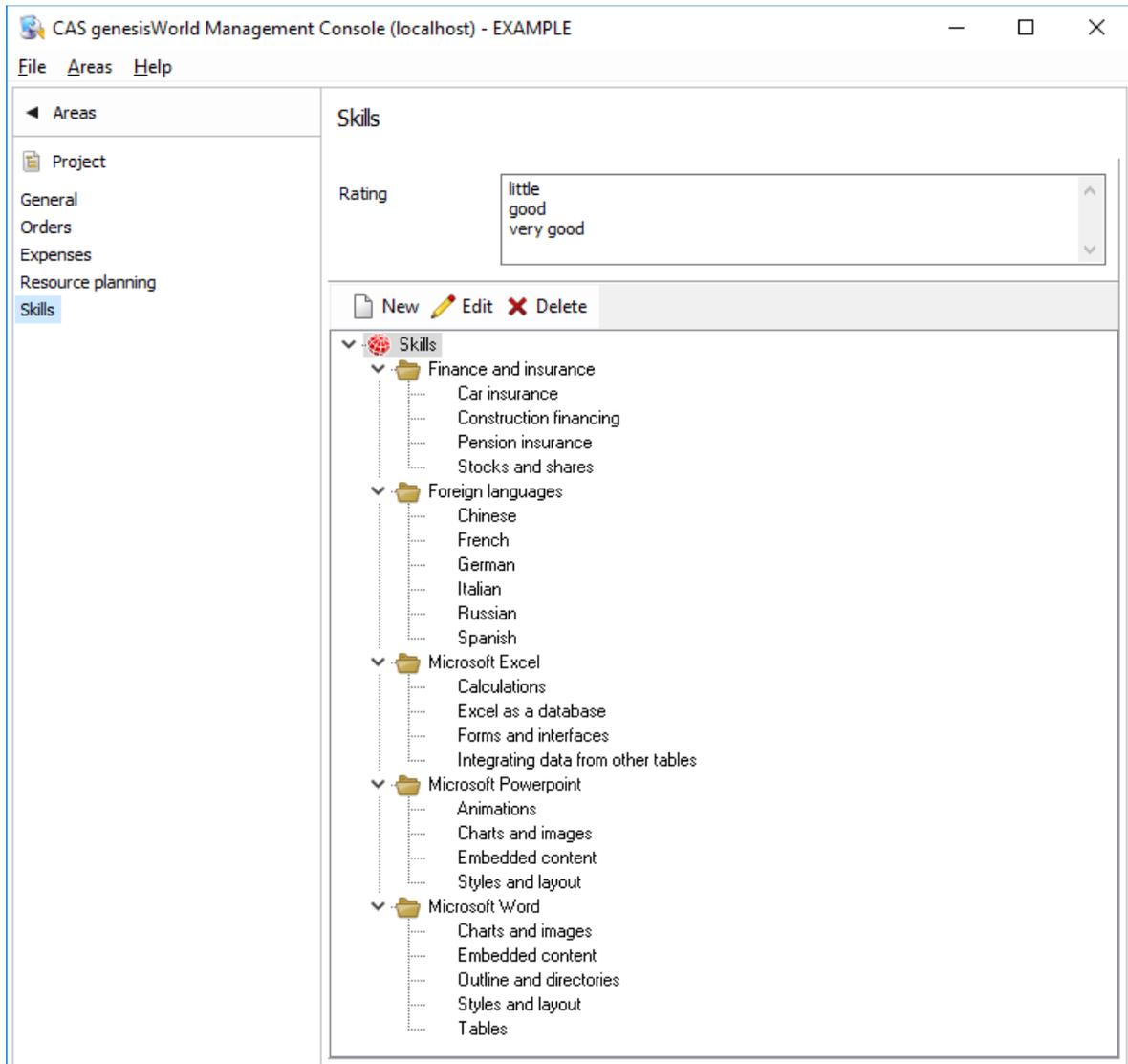
- **Booking settings for all time recording types:** Here you configure time recording for resource plans. You specify for each time record type whether time records of this type will be booked on resource plans.
  - **Neutral for accounting:** Time records that are neutral to accounting will not be considered in resource plans. This is the default setting for all time record types.
  - **Relevant for accounting:** Time records that are relevant for accounting will be considered in resource plans.
  - **Only for resource planning:** Time record types with this setting can only be created for jobs with a resource plan.

They are also relevant for accounting and will be considered in resource plans.
  - **Bill working time externally (automatically adopt Charged as Actual if Time budget remaining exists):** Select this setting if the **Actual** value in a time record of this type should automatically be transferred to the time record's **Charged** field.

### 9.3.5 Skills

Here you specify skills which will be available for selection in the **Skills** tab when editing employees' addresses. By categorizing them in sections and sub-sections you organize skills in a tree structure.

If you are also working with CAS teamWorks, the skills defined there will be adopted and may be edited synchronously in CAS genesisWorld.



- **Define rating:** By entering in the text window at the top you may name the options for rating the skills.

In the default setting, **little**, **good** and **very good** are distinguished.

Each row represents one level. You may distinguish as many levels as you wish.

When skills are assigned to employees, a star is displayed for every level. Nine stars are displayed at most. Higher levels may be distinguished in the menu for selecting the desired level.

 **Enter sections:** Select the **Skills** node to create a new section at root level or select another section to insert a sub-section there.

- ✓ Click **New** to open the **Create template** window.
- ✓ Enter the desired description.
- ✓ Insert the section by clicking on **Next** or **OK**.
  - Click **Next** to select the new section. The **Create template** window will stay open to create more sections or a new skill.
  - Click **OK** to close the **Create template** window.
  - Click **Previous** to select the superordinate section.

 **Enter skills:** Select the **Skills** node to insert a new skill at root level or select a section or sub-section.

- ✓ Click **New** to open the **Create template** window.
- ✓ Enter the desired description.
- ✓ Insert the skill by clicking on **OK**.
  - Click **Previous** to select the superordinate section.

 **Rename section or skill:** Select the section or skill to rename and click **Edit** or double-click on the selected entry.

 **Delete section or skill:** Select the section or skill to delete and click **Delete**. You will be prompted to confirm the deletion.

When you delete a section, all sub-sections and skills it contains will also be deleted.

When you delete a skill, all assignments of the skill to employees will also be deleted.

## 9.4 Settings in the Time record area

The following sections describe the settings in the **Time record** area:

- 9.4.1 General (page 210)
- 9.4.2 Mandatory links (page 212)
- 9.4.3 Calendar (page 213)
- 9.4.4 Hourly rates (page 214)
- 9.4.5 Working hours (page 216)

### 9.4.1 General

The screenshot shows the 'General' settings for the 'Time record' area in the CAS genesisWorld Management Console. The settings are organized into several sections:

- Duration of a person day:** 'One person day (1 PD) envelops' is set to 8 hours and 0 minutes.
- Granularity:** Both 'Actual' and 'Charged' are set to 1 minute.
- Overlap check:** The 'On' radio button is selected.
- Bill externally:** The 'Enter current date automatically' radio button is selected.
- Time window for the creation and editing of time records:**
  - 'Maximum to be recorded for future:' is set to 5 hrs.
  - 'Maximum to be recorded for past:' is set to 31 days.
  - 'Change time records of the past:' is set to 31 days.
  - 'No restriction for:' is set to a list of users: ADMINISTRATOR, Antonio Matarazzo, Ben Miller, Brenda Gladis, Britta Glatt, Frank Shreeve, and Markus Klohn.
- Calculate total:** A checkbox section with 'Jobs', 'Projects', and 'Service agreements' all checked.
- Travel time:** 'Time record type for travel time:' is set to 'Travel time'.

- **Duration of a person day:** Here you specify how many hours and minutes should be subsumed under one person day. The default setting is 8 hours.
- **Granularity:** Here you select the smallest recordable interval for the **Actual** and **Charged** fields. No smaller interval may be selected for **Charged** than for **Actual**.
  - 1 second, 1 minute, 5 minutes, 10 minutes, 15 minutes, 30 minutes, 1 hour
- **Overlap check:** Here you enable or disable the overlap check for time records.
- **Bill externally:** Here you specify whether users may edit the external billing date. In this case, users are prompted to enter the desired billing date when externally billing time records via the context menu of the time record list.
- **Time window for the creation and editing of time records**
  - **Maximum to be recorded for future:** Time records whose end time is further in the future than specified here may not be saved.
  - **Maximum to be recorded for past:** If the start of a time record to create is further in the past than specified here, it may not be saved.

- **Change time records of the past:** If the start of an existing time record is further in the past than specified here, changes made to it may not be saved.
- **No restriction for:** Select here users to exempt from the specified restrictions.
- **Calculate total:** Here you specify whether the total work time for a project, job or service agreement is calculated whenever time is recorded for it. Time records for associated tickets are considered for service agreements. The actual work time will be written in the **Actual time** field. The order value will be written in the **Charged** field.

## Note

The fields are updated whenever time records for projects, jobs or tickets belonging to a service agreement are created or deleted. The fields are not updated when the link for an associated data record is changed (e.g., when a ticket is removed from a service agreement by resetting the service agreement selection in the ticket).

With the Form Designer module, you can define business ratio fields that are updated automatically whenever the associated data record is opened.

Additionally, you can create new project, job and/or service agreement fields of the float type as target fields in the **Database** area of the Management Console and enter them as target fields for the business ratio fields. If you do, you can use scheduled updates to update these fields regularly automatically (e.g., nightly or hourly) or update them manually via the context menu (requires the **Actions: execute** other right).

Create the following business ratio fields for projects and/or jobs respectively:

1. Linked data record type: Time records / Calculation: Actual / Sum
2. Linked data record type: Time records / Calculation: Charged / Sum

To save the results in target fields you have created for projects and/or jobs, select them under **Save result in field** for the respective business ratio fields.

Under **Data records**, select the **Only primary links** link type.

Under **Formatting**, select the **Duration (person days)** or **Duration (24h/day)** format.

For service agreements, you need a two level business ratio field. First, create Actual/Target business ratio fields with associated target fields of the float type for jobs as described above. Then, create the following business ratio fields for service agreements:

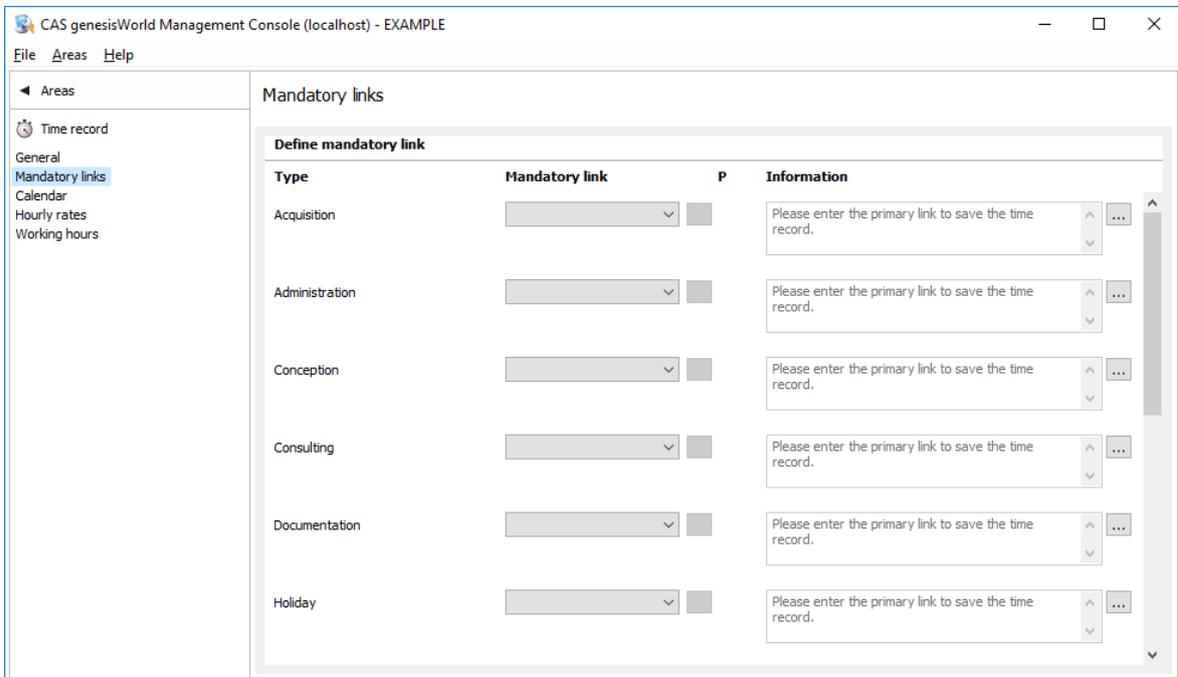
1. Linked data record type: Jobs / Calculation: (Actual target field) / Sum
2. Linked data record type: Jobs / Calculation: (Charged target field) / Sum

Then, enter the same settings as described above for projects and jobs (**Save result in field**, link type and format).

- **Time record type for travel time:** Select here the time record type for recording the trips to and from the destination for appointments in CAS genesisWorld Web and CAS genesisWorld Desktop.

## 9.4.2 Mandatory links

Here you define mandatory links for time record types.



- **Mandatory link:** Select here the desired data record type.
  - **Specify filter condition:** Click on the filter icon to specify filter conditions.
  - **Participant:** If you select the **P** option, the time record's participant must also be a participant of the linked data record to save the time record.

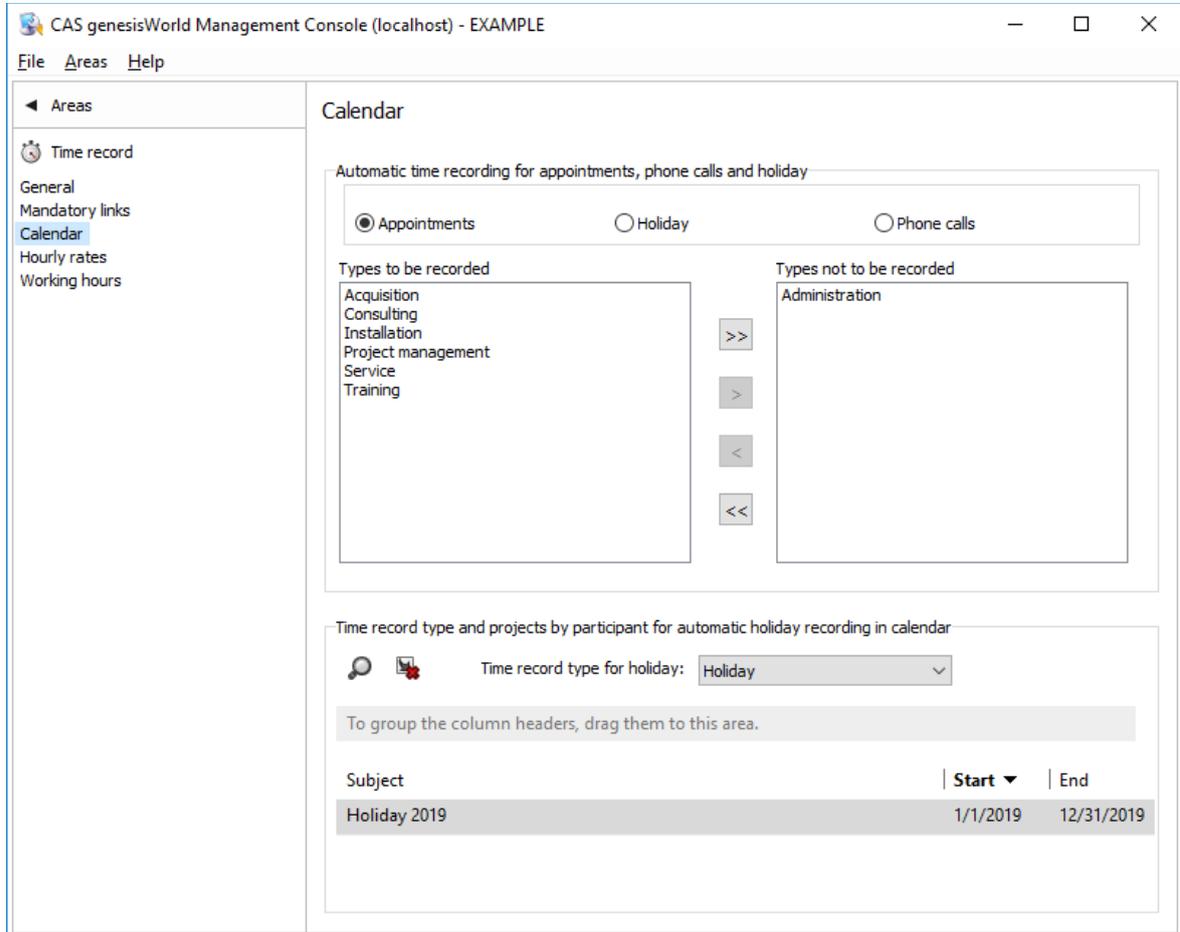
Groups are not resolved here. Only if a user has directly been entered as the participant of a data record, he or she can record time for it.

- **Information:** Enter here a message to display when a user tries saving a time record which is not linked as specified here.

... Here you enter the message in different languages.

## 9.4.3 Calendar

Here you configure the time record calendar's multiple recording feature.



- **Automatic time recording for appointments, phone calls and holiday:** Here you select appointment, holiday and phone call types for which time should automatically be recorded when clicking on the associated button in the calendar. With teamWorks, holidays are distinguished by the **Holiday type** field, if there are no types for holidays.

To lock the recording of certain types or holiday types, select the data record type for which you wish to modify the setting. Then carry over the entries for which time should not automatically be recorded to the right list.

- **Time record type and projects by participant [...]:** Select here projects in which leaves taken by their respective participants will be recorded. When a participant of a project selected here records a leave in the calendar, the time records will be booked on the project.

 **Search project:** Here you select a project in the **Search** window. Via the list you may open, view and edit it.

 **Remove:** Here you remove a project from the selection.

- **Time record type for holiday:** Specify the type for holiday records here.

## 9.4.4 Hourly rates

Here you specify global hourly rates. They are valid for all customers and projects for which you do not specify different hourly rates.

Entering different hourly rates for specific customers and projects is described in section "7.1.6 Defining hourly rates for addresses and projects" on page 103.

	All	Acquisition	Administration	Conception	Consulting	Documentation	Holiday	Marketing	Programming	Project management	Service	Support	Training	Travel time
All	60													
Antonio Matarazzo	50	50	50	50	50	50	50	50	50	50	50	50	50	50
Ben Miller	70	70	70	70	70	70	70	70	70	70	70	70	70	70
Brenda Gladis	50	50	50	50	50	50	50	50	50	50	50	50	50	50
Frank Shreeve	50	50	50	50	50	50	50	50	50	50	50	50	50	50
Marcus Clayden	60	60	60	60	60	60	60	60	60	60	60	60	60	60
Michael Green	50	50	50	50	50	50	50	50	50	50	50	50	50	50
Peter Grayhound	50	50	50	50	50	50	50	50	50	50	50	50	50	50
Robert Glade	70	70	70	70	70	70	70	70	70	70	70	70	70	70
Conference Room	20	20	20	20	20	20	20	20	20	20	20	20	20	20

- **Allow to enter internal hourly rates for addresses and projects:** By default, you may only enter different external hourly rates for addresses and projects. Select this option in order to also enter different internal hourly rates for addresses and projects.

 **Save:** Here you save changes made to the hourly rates in the database.

Close the view without saving to revert changes.

 **Transfer hourly rates:** Here you overwrite the displayed hourly rates, **Internal** or **External** (see below), with the hourly rates from the other view. This includes emptying fields that are empty in the other view.

- After confirmation, the changes will be displayed in the view.
- The changes will only be applied to the database when they are saved.
- Close the view without saving to revert changes.

 **Select participants:** Here you select the users and resources to display. Users and resources for which internal or external hourly rates have already been entered will automatically be selected when you open the view. When a user or resource is removed, associated hourly rates will be retained.

- **Internal and External:** The **Internal** and **External** tabs are structured identically.
  - **Internal:** Here you specify internal hourly rates. Billing a time record internally will determine the internal hourly rate for the user/resource and activity (time record type) and multiply it with the **Actual** work time to calculate the **Actual costs**.

- **External:** Here you specify external hourly rates. Billing a time record externally will determine the external hourly rate for the user/resource and activity (time record type) and multiply it with the **Charged** order value to calculate the **Actual turnover**.
- **Entering hourly rates:** The white table fields are provided for entering hourly rates valid for exactly one user or resource and one activity (time record type). The yellow fields are provided for entering hourly rates valid for users, resources and activities for which no other hourly rate was specified.
- **General hourly rate:** Enter the general hourly rate in the first field of the table in the top left corner. It will be valid for all table fields and thereby for all users, resources and activities (time record types) for which no other hourly rate is specified.

The general hourly rate will show up in all of these fields in italics.

- **Hourly rates for users and resources:** Enter hourly rates for users and resources in the first column. Each of these will be valid for all table fields of the associated row and thereby for all activities (time record types) for which no other hourly rate is specified.

The hourly rate will show up in all of these fields in italics.

Internal hourly rates for users and resources take precedence over internal hourly rates for activities (time record types).

External hourly rates for users and resources are only valid for activities (time record types) for which no other hourly rate was specified.

- **Hourly rates for activities (time record types):** Enter hourly rates for activities (time record types) in the first row. Each of these hourly rates is valid for all table fields of the associated column and thereby for all users and resources for which you have not specified another hourly rate. The hourly rate for the type will show up in all of these fields in italics.

The hourly rate will show up in all of these fields in italics.

Internal hourly rates for activities (time record types) are only valid for users and resources for which no other hourly rate was specified.

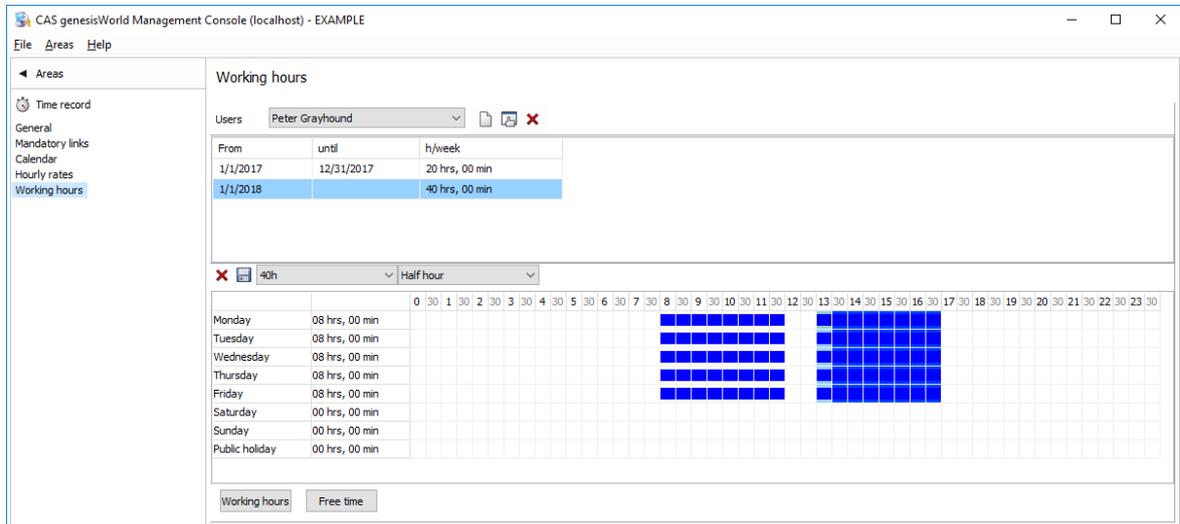
External hourly rates for activities (time record types) take precedence over external hourly rates for users and resources.

- **Hourly rates for a user/resource and activity (time record type):** Enter hourly rates for specific users or resources and for specific activities (time record types) into the respective white table field in which the row for the user or resource and the column for the activity (time record type) intersect.

Such hourly rates in white table fields take precedence over any other hourly rates.

## 9.4.5 Working hours

Here you record a log of working hours for employees and a log of availability hours for resources.



- Views and Features for logged working hours:** The following features consider the working hours you enter here. For employees for which you do not enter working hours here, the working hours you enter in your user settings in the **Calendar** tab are used instead.
  - Planner (interactive):** This view displays working hours entered here in its Gantt view and in its workload view, and calculates the workload based on them. You must enter Resource availability hours here to display them in the view.
  - Time recording:** In the time record calendar and in the data record window for time records, the working hours you enter here are considered.
  - Resource planning in the tree view:** The tree view's resource planning view displays working hours entered here and calculates the workload based on them.
  - Report [Report module]:** In Report views for time records, for which you have activated working hours calculation in the **User data** tab in the view's properties, the working hours you enter here are used.

### Note

For users and resources for which you enter working hours here, the interactive planner view, the time record calendar, the tree view's resource planning view and report views will display no working hours before the first working hours period you enter.

- Select user or resource:** Select a user or resource in the menu to the top left to view the working or availability hours.

 **Create working hours period:** Here you create a new working hours period. You will be prompted to enter the desired start date for the new working hours period. The day before the start date of the following working hours period will be automatically entered as end date. If no working hours period follows, the end date is left blank. Enter the working hours in the view's lower half (see "Edit working hours" below).

 **Change start date:** Here you change the start date of the selected working hours period. Alternatively, you may change the start date by double-clicking on a list entry.

 **Delete working hours period:** Here you delete the selected working hours period. You will be prompted to confirm the deletion.

- **Edit working hours:** In the view's lower half, you enter the desired working or availability hours.
  - **Granularity:** Select the granularity in the menu at the top right of the lower toolbar (**Hour, Half hour, Quarter hour, 5 minutes** or **Minute**).
  - **Working hours:** Using your mouse, select the desired working hours in the week view and click **Working hours** to enter them.
  - **Free time:** To remove working hours you have already entered, select them using your mouse and click **Free time**.

Please note that working hours entered for public holidays will only be applied when the public holiday is on a week day with working hours. For example, if no working hours are entered for Sundays, public holidays on a Sunday are also considered free, even if working hours have been entered for public holidays.

The working hours you enter will be transferred directly to the list of working hours periods and saved.

 **Save working hours template:** Here you save the working hours you have entered in a template to transfer them to other users or resources.

- **Select working hours template:** In the left menu of the lower toolbar, you may select a template to transfer the working hours stored in it to the list entry you have selected in the upper list. Changes made to the displayed working hours will be saved in the user's working hours as well as in the template.

 **Delete working hours template:** Here you delete the selected working hours template. You will be prompted to confirm the deletion. Deleting a working hours template has no effect on working hours created from that template.

## 9.5 Settings in the User Management area

If you are working with differing product prices or alternative descriptions for products (see "9.2.4 Products" on page 192), you may select defaults for the currency and product description for users in the **User Management** area.

Double-click a user and select the desired defaults in the **General** tab:

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Properties Antonio Matarazzo" with a close button (X) in the top right corner. The dialog has a tabbed interface with the following tabs: External access to other users, Authentication, Navigators, E-mail settings, Address check, Administration rights, Licensed modules, View formats, Business units, General (selected), Membership, Rights, Other rights, and External access from other users. The "General" tab contains the following fields and options:

- Name:** Antonio Matarazzo
- Description:** Sales Manager Italy
- E-mail address:** Antonio.Matarazzo@cas-demo.it
- Default language:** Italian (with a dropdown arrow)
- Administrator
- Deactivated
- Replication
- Guest: No access to public records
- Invite to appointments only
- Default currency:** EUR (with a dropdown arrow)
- Product description (Standard):** Italian (with a dropdown arrow)

At the bottom of the dialog are three buttons: OK, Cancel, and Apply.

- **Default currency:** The selected default currency will automatically be selected in new opportunity, project and receipt items (with Easy Invoice) created by this user.

The setting is available when the **Maintain different prices for products** option is selected in the **Miscellaneous** area of the Management Console under **Products**.

- The system base currency is the default setting for all users.
  - The setting will only be applied to the first item of an opportunity, project or receipt. This determines the currency for the data record and all additional associated items.
  - It is not possible to create individual items with a different currency.
- **Product description (Standard):** The selected default description will automatically be selected in new opportunity, project and receipt items (with Easy Invoice) created by this user.

The setting is available when the **Use alternative product description** option is selected in the **Miscellaneous** area of the Management Console under **Products**.

- In addition to the product description, the quantity unit will also be entered.
- The preselection "-" is the default setting for all users and represents the **Standard** item in the selection of the product description and quantity unit
- The setting will only be applied to the first item of an opportunity, project or receipt. This then determines the description and quantity unit for all additional associated items.

## 10 Changes in version x5 and newer

---

The range of features of the Project module was revised for version x5:

- Overlaps with opportunities and the associated CAS genesisWorld standard features for covering the sales side were cleared up. In order to integrate the transition from the quote phase to the order phase, you can now create projects for opportunities. Also, handling project items now more closely resembles handling opportunity items.
- The **Analysis** view and associated **Budget planning** is replaced by report views for time records, resource plans, expenses and external services, providing a subset of features of the Report module requiring no extra license.

If you've been using Project with its previous range of features, you can switch to the new functionality via the **Project** area of the Management Console. Please note that features listed in "10.2 Discontinued features in Project x5" on page 221 will no longer be available after switching. If you don't switch, you can keep using the previous functionality.

New customers can only use the new version.

### 10.1 Database changes (also applies to existing customers)

The following fields will be renamed or created when updating to the current version.

- **Item:** New fields will only be displayed in the data record window when using the new range of features. However, the fields will always be written when a project item is saved with sufficient permissions. They will also be available everywhere else (list, filters, Report module, Form Designer module).
  - **Product** (new field, will adopt the linked product's subject)
  - **Product** => **Product number** (only changed in the data record window; the new name was already used in the list and in filter conditions)
  - **Unit price** => **Price**
  - **Quoted price** (new field, **Price** less discount per piece. When you update to CAS genesisWorld x5, this field will be calculated and entered for any existing items).
  - **Absolute contribution margin** => **Contribution margin**
  - **Volume** => **Sum**
- **Project**
  - **Planned volume** => **Total**
- **Project/Job**
  - **Locked for time recording** => **Lock for time recording**

## 10.2 Discontinued features in Project x5

The following features will no longer be available for new customers in version x5 as well as for customers switching to the new range of features.

Fields listed here will stay available in the list as well as the Report and Form Designer modules (formula editor) for existing customers even after switching to the new range of features. You can still filter by these fields.

- **Discontinued sales features**
  - **Project > Sales** with the **Order scheduled for**, **Deputy (comm.)**, **Customer budget**, **Source**, **Achieved volume**, **Probability (%)**, **Weighted volume** and **CM relative total** fields, the **Planning type** (Top down/Bottom up; the **Bottom up** field will now always be set to true for new projects) and **Payment deadlines** (absolute/relative) settings as well as the **Decision criteria**.

### Note

Please note that Form Designer modifications of the **Sales** tab will no longer be visible, even in the **Form Designer** area of the Management Console, once you have switched to the new range of features.

The **Sales** tab is substituted with the new **Order** tab. It can be extended with Form Designer as the **Sales** tab previously could. Fields and other controls inserted with Form Designer will appear above the item list.

- **Item: Probability (%)**, **Weighted volume** and **Weighted contribution margin** fields.
- **Analysis of items** view (Creation and existing views)
- **Analysis and budget planning**
  - **Address/Project/Job: Analysis** tab
  - **Project/Job: Budget planning** tab
  - **Project details: Time record** (cumulated values). The **Lock for time recording** option will stay available in the project details.
  - **Project list > context menu: Update calculation** option
  - **Analysis of time records** view (Creation and existing views)
  - **Discontinued project fields (previously "Details" and "Analysis")**: **Budget**, **Completion**, **Actual costs**, **Actual turnover**, **Remain** and **Nominal**
  - **Discontinued job fields (previously "Analysis")**: **Budget**, **Completion**, **Actual costs**, **Actual turnover**, **Remain** and **Nominal**

## 10.3 New features in Project x5

The following features will additionally be available for new customers in version x5 as well as for existing customers switching to the new range of features.

- **New features with opportunity integration**
  - **Opportunity > Product items: Create project** (a new project as well as an item per product item of the opportunity will be created.)
  - **Project > Order:** Replaces the **Sales** tab. The upper section is dropped. The item list is retained with all associated features.

Form Designer modifications entered for the **Sales** tab will no longer be visible, even in the **Form Designer** area of the Management Console, once you have switched to the new range of features.

The new **Order** tab can be extended with Form Designer as the **Sales** tab previously could. Fields and other controls inserted with Form Designer will appear above the item list.

- **Item:** Was adapted to more closely resemble the opportunities' product items. New features here are the storing of the product subject, the **Quoted price** field which includes the discount as well as the currency. All items for a project must share the same currency. A mixed currency is not supported.
- **Reports for resource plans, time records, expenses and external services**
  - **Address:** External services, Expenses, Time records
  - **Project:** Comparison nominal/Actual, External services, Expenses, Time records, Resource planning
  - **Job:** Time records
  - **Extension of the reports** (selected fields, etc. can be changed. The data record types to be analyzed can not be changed.)

Extended features are available for these reports with the Project license, even without the Report license (see "7.7.4 Working with reports" and "7.7.5 Editing reports" on page 141).

## 10.4 Discontinued database fields in Project x7

The **Total** and **Contribution margin** database fields are no longer available in version x7 for new customers and for existing customers switching to the new range of features.

The fields are no longer displayed in project lists and are no longer available for filter conditions as well as in the formula editor of the Form Designer and Report modules.

The figures are still displayed in the **Order** tab of a project based on selected project items.

## 10.5 New features and fields in Project x11.1.7

The manual resource planning mode in the Web Client is only available in version x11.1.7 or a more recent version and requires a database update which is optional in version x11.

Please note that, if your database was created with a version prior to x11.1.7, you must first activate this feature in the Management Console (see „Distribution of working times“ in section „9.3.4 Resource planning“ on page 204).

If your database version is less recent than x11.1.7, you will also need to update your database to x11.1.7 or a more recent version first.

Please remember to make a backup of your database before you do this.

The update to version x12 includes the update required for manual resource planning (it is no longer optional in version x12 and more recent versions).

Databases created with version x11.1.7 or a more recent version will use the manual distribution by default. For existing customers, the automatic distribution is selected by default, such that nothing changes.

- **New resource plan fields available with the update** (available for resource plans in the Desktop Client and Web Client as well as in the **Project planning** and **Resource planning** Web Client apps)
  - **Planned working time**: Originally planned working time.
  - **Deviating working time**: Originally **Planned working time** minus the current **Total estimate**. Differences are due to time records exceeding values planned for the associated week or month or additionally cleared workload (**ETC**).
- **New features available with the update**
  - **Manual resource planning in the Web Client** (see section „5.6 Resource planning in the Web Client“ on page 71)
  - **Manual resource planning reports** (see Report user guide)
- **Features no longer available after switching to manual planning mode**
  - **Resource planning in the tree view and associated settings (Desktop Client)**